

**MAKE DISCIPLES OF
ALL THE NATIONS**

Grace Mercy Ministry

Make Disciples of all the Nations

Copyright 2010 by Grace Mercy Ministry

Published by Truth Life Publishers

P.O. Box 1381

Dewey AZ 86327

Eighth Edition: September 2014

ISBN: 978-0-615-41589-5

Printed in the United States of America

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means – electronic, mechanical, photocopy, recording or otherwise – without prior written permission by Grace Mercy Ministry, except as provided by USA copyright law.

All Scripture quotations are from the New American Standard translation.

DEDICATION

We dedicate this book to our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ for His Infallible Holy Word which gives us all the knowledge, understanding and wisdom we need to be true disciples of His. It is our desire that this book will help Christians bring glory to God.

We also dedicate this book to the greatest disciple of the twentieth century – Dawson Trotman (1906-1956), founder of “The Navigators.” He was too busy serving Jesus to accept an invitation from Billy Graham to form a discipleship ministry for the Billy Graham Evangelistic Association. Yet he developed the B-rations that the Billy Graham Evangelistic Association has used ever since. Billy said of him, “I think Daws has personally touched more lives than anybody I have ever known.” Graham interrupted his crusade in Oklahoma City to “preach his funeral” in Colorado Springs. He also devoted a week of his “Hour of Decision” radio program to Trotman’s memory. Charles E. Fuller, founder of Fuller Theological Seminary, did the same with his “Old Fashion Revival Hour” program.

The work and writings of Trotman were the inspiration and instrumental in the foundation of the Campus Outreach Ministry and Grace Mercy Ministry. His two most inspirational quotes are:

“Do what others can not and will not do.”

“The greatest amount of wasted time is the time not getting started.”

We urge you to read his story in Appendixes H and I.

Our Vision

It is the vision of Grace Mercy Ministry to motivate and help every church of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ to establish a discipleship program. It is also our vision that every believer on Earth go through a discipleship program, whether it is this one or another so every believer can bring the greatest amount of glory possible to God.

CONTENTS

FOREWORD	11
PREFACE	13
INTRODUCTION	17
INTRODUCTORY QUIZ	31
DISCIPLESHIP COURSE	35
PART 1 – THE BASICS	38
STEP ONE	
The Tools	39
STEP TWO	
The Gospel	41
STEP THREE	
Gospel passages to study	47
STEP FOUR	
Faith check	49
STEP FIVE	
Discipleship partner	55
PART II – STUDY TO SHOW YOURSELF APPROVED	
STEP SIX	
Spiritual Fitness Program	59
STEP SEVEN	
Prayer	65
STEP EIGHT	
Schemes of the devil	75

STEP NINE	
Armor of God	93
STEP TEN	
Study questions	101
PART THREE – GROW UNTO A MATURE MAN	124
STEP ELEVEN	
Memorizing and meditating on Scripture	127
STEP TWELVE	
How to do an exegetical study	135
STEP THIRTEEN	
Exegetical studies of the sanctification passage	139
STEP FOURTEEN	
Exegetical studies on misunderstood passages	141
STEP FIFTEEN	
Exegetical studies of books	145
STEP SIXTEEN	
How to do a topical study	151
STEP SEVENTEEN	
Topical studies of fundamental doctrines	161
STEP EIGHTEEN	
Your statement of faith	163
STEP NINETEEN	
More topical studies	165
PART IV - MAKE DISCIPLES	167
STEP TWENTY	
Leading a Bible study	169
STEP TWENTY-ONE	
Seminary curriculum	173
STEP TWENTY-TWO	
Shepherding a church	183
TEACHING OUTLINE	209
DISCIPLESHIP COURSE FINAL EXAM	225

AFTERWORD	237
APPENDIX A What you must do to be saved	244
APPENDIX B Faith Check	249
APPENDIX C Spiritual Fitness Program	251
APPENDIX D Be filled with the HOLY SPIRIT	257
APPENDIX E Humility	259
APPENDIX F Ministries of the church	265
APPENDIX G Spiritual success	269
APPENDIX H Religion: The Navigator	271
APPENDIX I Born To Reproduce by Dawson E. Trotman	275

INVITATION

Believer, we invite you to read through this book slowly. Please, **read** the **Preface** and the **Introduction**, take the **Introductory Quiz** and read **Appendixes H** and **I** before you read Step One. If you read through these introductory statements and the story of Dawson Trotman you will know whether or not you want to go through this course. We pray that you decide to start it and go to at least Step Ten. We are convinced that every believer is capable of completing the first 10 steps.

Once you complete Step Ten give serious prayer and consideration to moving on to steps 11-19. Not every believer will be able to complete these steps, but go as far as you can. If you cannot complete a step move on to another one. Do whatever steps you can.

If you decide to not take this course read the appendices. There is a great amount of knowledge, understanding and wisdom in them. Remember what the Creator of the Universe said through His prophet Hosea:

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being my priest. Since you have forgotten the law of your God, I will also forget your children. (Hosea 4.6)

If the people of Israel in the Old Testament dispensation could be and were destroyed by “*lack of knowledge*,” then so can we. Your life can be destroyed (ruined) by a lack of knowledge. Even if you do not go through the first ten steps go to Appendix C and set up a spiritual discipline.

*Therefore thus says the Holy One of Israel, since you have **rejected this word**, and have put your trust in oppression and guile, and have relied on them. Therefore this iniquity will be to you (Isaiah 30.12-13a)*

Pastors, please read the entire book if you decide to use this course. If you decide to not use it, please read the Preface, Step 22, and appendixes F and G.

Unsaved reader, please read Appendix A before you read anything else.

FOREWORD

Why are the cults swallowing up people (even some who profess to know Christ) at an alarming rate? This question is posed because this book has the answer, and it will prayerfully wake up those who read it that every believer is a disciple of Christ and should live like one.

This treatise on discipleship will equip disciples to combat the cults, weakness in doctrine, apathy, error, and the onslaught of the devil. There are ample feel-good books and informative writings on the market, but this book on discipleship will truly add meat to one's spiritual skeleton.

In the book of Colossians, the apostle Paul urges believers to be settled, built up, established, grounded, and rooted in the faith. While listening to preaching is a necessary element of the Christian faith, this book teaches the believer how to also effectively feed himself from the Word of God through daily reading, study, memorization and meditation on it.

This book is thought-provoking, yet written with great plainness of speech; thorough, yet not overburdening. It will challenge the newborn believer and the mature saint alike.

As a roommate of the author in Germany during my tour in the Air Force, I can truly say that I have yet to meet a more diligent student of the Word of God. The disciplines he writes of – Bible study, memorization, meditation, prayer and evangelism – are lived out in his own life. This is a credible, well-framed help for all who would “*work out [their] own salvation with fear and trembling.*”

Read, take to heart, heed, and apply the knowledge contained in this book. Completion of the steps laid out in this book will aid one in being “*thoroughly furnished unto all good works.*”

May the Lord Jesus Christ be praised for His great grace and may He receive all the glory. *Thanks be unto God for His unspeakable gift!*

Gregory J. Risse
April 2010

PREFACE

A word for pastors

The things which you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses, these entrust to faithful men who will be able to teach others also. (2 Timothy 2.2)

And He gave some as apostles, and some as prophets, and some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers, for the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Christ. (Ephesians 4.11-12)

A primary duty of every pastor is to disciple faithful men so they can become pastors. Yet pastors should also make disciples of everyone in the church. Discipling is “*the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Christ*” so the local church and every believer can bring the maximum amount of glory to God.

A pastor’s lips “*should preserve knowledge, and men should seek instruction from his mouth; for he is the messenger of the LORD of hosts*” (Malachi 2.7). He is to feed the flock so everyone thirsts and longs for the Word (John 1.1) as a newborn baby cries for milk:

Like newborn babies, long for the pure milk of the word, that by it you may grow in respect to salvation. (1 Peter 2.2)

As the deer pants for the water brooks, so my soul pants for Thee, O God. My soul thirsts for God, for the living God; When shall I come and appear before God? (Psalm 42.1-2)

O God, Thou are my God; I shall seek Thee earnestly; my soul thirsts for Thee, my flesh yearns for Thee, in a dry and weary land where there is no water. (Psalm 63.1)

I stretch out my hands to Thee; my soul longs for Thee, as a parched land. (Psalm 143.6)

As saints are disciplined they will be able to share their faith:

But sanctify Christ as Lord in your hearts, always being ready to make a defense to everyone who asks you to give an account for the hope that is in you, yet with gentleness and reverence. (1 Peter 3.15)

Husbands and fathers need to be disciplined so they can discipline their wives, sons and daughters:

“Only give heed to yourself and keep your soul diligently, lest you forget the things which your eyes have seen and lest they depart from your heart all the days of your life; but make them known to your sons and your grandsons. Remember the day you stood before the LORD your God at Horeb, when the LORD said to me, ‘Assemble the people to Me, that I may let them hear My words so they may learn to fear Me all the days they live on the earth, and that they may teach their children.’” (Deuteronomy 4.9-10)

“These words, which I am commanding you today, shall be on your heart, and you shall teach them diligently to your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up.” (Deuteronomy 6.6-7)

“You shall therefore impress these words of mine on your heart and on your soul; and you shall bind them as a sign on your hand, and they shall be as frontals on your forehead. And you shall teach them to your sons, talking of them when you sit in your house and when you walk along the road and when you lie down and when you rise up.” (Deuteronomy 11.18-19)

“Which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told us. We will not conceal them from their children, but tell to the generation to come the praises of the LORD, and His strength and His wondrous works that He has done. For He established a testimony in Jacob and appointed a law in Israel, which He commanded our fathers that they should teach them to their children, that the generation to come might know, even the children yet to be born, that they may arise and tell them to their children, that they should put their confidence in God and not forget the works of God, but keep His commandments.” (Psalm 78.3-7)

Mothers need to be disciplined so they can assist their husbands:

Hear, my son, your father’s instruction and do not forsake your mother’s teaching. (Proverbs 1.8)

My son, observe the commandment of your father, and do not forsake the teaching of your mother. (Proverbs 6.20)

INTRODUCTION

This book is designed to assist all believers in Jesus Christ to disciple themselves and others. Discipleship is extremely important because every believer is to do everything for the glory of God (1 Corinthians 10.31). A believer cannot serve God fully and bring the ultimate amount of glory to Him without being disciplined first.

We encourage every believer to follow the steps in this book to grow to maturity. We also encourage every father to be disciplined and then disciple his wife and children. If you have difficulty in following the steps or need help ask your pastor, assistant pastor or a deacon to help you.

Everyone who believes in Jesus is a *disciple* and needs to learn what that involves. This book explains what a *disciple* is and what he should do. Read through this book carefully and complete as many steps as you can. Every believer should be able to complete the first ten steps. The remaining steps are harder and some will not be able to complete them. Do not lose heart. Complete as many steps as you can and then maintain your spiritual fitness program. Try to continually increase your intake of the Word until you go home to be with the Lord.

Jesus commissioned His *disciples* to be witnesses to His resurrection and to make *disciples* (*teach all nations*):

Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit; teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the age. Amen. (Matthew 28.19-20)

*But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be **My witnesses** both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and Samaria, and even to the remotest part of the earth. (Acts 1.8)*

That commission applies to all true believers. Once a person is saved, by trusting in Jesus Christ alone and in nothing else, he is a *disciple* of Jesus. Yet even though every believer is technically a *disciple* one needs to live like a *disciple*. A believer lives like a true *disciple* by engaging in several spiritual activities on a daily and a regular basis:

1. **Pray** (Deuteronomy 9.25-26; 1 Samuel 15.11; 1 Chronicles 16.11; Psalm 88.9; Proverbs 15.29; Isaiah 56.7; Matthew 5.44; 6.5-6; 7.7-11; 26.41; Luke 11.5-10; 18.1-8; John 14.13-14; 15.16; 16.24; Acts 1.14; 2.42; 4.31; 6.4; 1 Corinthians 7.5; Ephesians 6.18; Philippians 4.6; Colossians 4.2; 1 Thessalonians 5.17; 1 Timothy 2.1-2; 5.5; 2 Timothy 2.8; James 1.5; 1 Peter 3.7).
2. **Listen** to Scripture (Deuteronomy 4.10; Proverbs 8.34; 22.17; 23.12; Luke 8.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Revelation 1.3).
3. **Read** Scripture (Deuteronomy 17.19; Isaiah 34.16; Revelation 1.3).
4. **Study** Scripture (Proverbs 2.1-5; 8.34; John 5.39; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15).
5. **Memorize** Scripture (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Romans 10.8; Colossians 3.16).
6. **Meditate** on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; Colossians 3.16).

7. **Fellowship** with the brethren (Psalm 22.22; 119.63; Proverbs 13.20; Acts 2.42, 46-47; 5.42; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25; 1 John 1.7).
8. **Worship** with the brethren and privately (Deuteronomy 6.13; 26.10; 1 Chronicles 16.29; Psalm 2.11; 29.2; 96.9; 99.5, 9; 132.7; Jeremiah 7.2; Matthew 4.10; John 4.23-24; Romans 12.1; Philippians 3.3; Revelation 4.10; 14.17; 19.10; 22.9)
9. **Share the Gospel** (Psalm 9.1; 26.7; 35.28; 96.2; Proverbs 11.30; Mark 16.15; Acts 2.47; 1 Peter 3.15).
10. **Be discipled** (Proverbs 1.8; 4.1; 6.20; Eph. 4.11-13).
11. **Make disciples** (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; 6.5-7; 11.18-19; 32.46; Psalm 78.3-7; Proverbs 1.8; 4.1; 6.20; 22.6; Joel 1.3; Matthew 28.19-20; Ephesians 4.11-13; 2 Timothy 2.2).

Believers who develop discipline in these basics of holy living will be active *disciples*. It takes many years to become a mature *disciple*, but it starts with the daily discipline of being in prayer, the Word, fellowship, worship and evangelism. “Apply your heart to **discipline**, and your ears to words of knowledge” (Proverbs 23.12).

Pray in the morning and throughout the day. Set up a daily Bible reading program. If you read four chapters a day you will read through the Bible in a year. Read three chapters in the Old Testament each day and one chapter in the New Testament. Buy an audio copy of the Bible, and listen to it as much as possible at home and in your car. Buy DVDs about the Bible and watch them often (*Jesus, The Gospel of John, Peter and Paul, Peter, The Greatest Story Ever Told, King of Kings*, etc.). Memorize Scripture. Try to memorize one verse a week. Meditate on verses you have memorized. Let the Holy

Spirit teach you. Learn how to share the gospel and then share your personal testimony, and the gospel as the Lord leads.

A good beginning program of spiritual discipline is reading four chapters each day of the Bible (3 chapters in the O.T. and 1 in the N.T.). Pray twice for five or more minutes when you wake up and as you lie down to sleep. Also pray short prayers throughout the day. Set aside 15 minutes a day to memorize and review Scripture. Also set aside 15 minutes a day to meditate on Scripture. Try to do this during the day, but if you cannot meditate during the day do so after you have prayed as you lay in bed. Get into a habit of meditating on Scripture as you lie in bed at night. It is a most blessed way to fall asleep.

It is important to find brethren to fellowship with. A home Bible study is one way to find fellow *disciples*. Look for a study where the teacher knows the Bible and knows how to teach. Avoid a study where the people share their ignorance. We recommend you only attend a church that has a solid *discipleship* program. If it does not have one give the pastor a copy of this book and encourage him to start one. If he does not start one using this book or another program consider going to church that has a *discipleship* program.

Paul told the Corinthians to imitate him as he imitated Jesus (1 Corinthians 11.1). If we are to imitate Paul and Jesus we must be *disciples* because Paul was the greatest *disciple* and apostle and Jesus was also a *disciple* (Isaiah 50.4-5).

All *disciples* are fishers of men who actively lead people to the Lord. Jesus was the greatest fisher of men and He called His *disciples* to be the same:

Now as Jesus was walking by the Sea of Galilee, He saw two brothers, Simon who was called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea; for they were fishermen. And He said to them, "Follow Me, and I will make you fishers of men." (Matthew 4.18-20)

All believers should be *disciples* and therefore fishers of men. If you are not a fisher of men study this book carefully and you will become one.

When church leaders do not exert strong leadership, but bow to the wishes of the people their spiritual welfare declines quickly. When the pastors do not teach and preach solid, biblical sermons in which they explain what the Bible says the people remain spiritual babies.

For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but wanting to have their ears tickled, they will accumulate for themselves teachers in accordance to their own desires, and will turn away their ears from the truth and will turn aside to myths. (2 Timothy 4.3-4)

Most pastors preach lukewarm, sour-milk sermons that make people “feel good” and keep them in a permanent state of spiritual infancy. In many churches in America the majority of the members are spiritual babies who have no desire to grow spiritually. They are like the Corinthians: “*I gave you milk to drink, not solid food; for you were not yet able to receive it. Indeed, even now you are not yet able, for you are still fleshly.*” (1 Corinthians 3:2-3a).

Do you want to die a spiritual baby in your spiritual crib? If you do not want to die in spiritual infancy start with Step 1 and do not stop until you finish Step 10. If you want to grow to maturity do not stop until you reach Step 20, and if you have been called to be a pastor finish all 22 steps.

Some deacons and Bible teachers in church have become stagnant in their spiritual growth. They reached a level of spiritual maturity that they are comfortable with and stopped growing. They read a few verses or maybe even a whole chapter each day and stopped memorizing Scripture. They no longer study the Bible. They are content in their position in the church and their level of maturity. They have arrived.

Spiritual stagnation is just as bad as spiritual infantilism. God hates both! Believers who stop growing are in danger of being thrown away by God and swallowed up by the world. Every believer who stops growing always becomes worldly, seeking after the desires of the flesh and the desires of the

eyes. Have you ever seen a spiritually stagnant believer who does not have desires for the things of the world?

Carefully read, study and meditate on the following passage:

“I am the true vine, and My Father is the vinedresser. Every branch in Me that does not bear fruit, He takes away; and every branch that bears fruit, He prunes it so that it may bear more fruit. You are already clean because of the word which I have spoken to you. Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself unless it abides in the vine, so neither can you unless you abide in Me. I am the vine, you are the branches; he who abides in Me and I in him, he bears much fruit, for apart from Me you can do nothing. If anyone does not abide in Me, he is thrown away as a branch and dries up; and they gather them, and cast them into the fire and they are burned. (John 15.1-6)

Do you want to spiritually dry up and be cast off from Jesus? If you do not have a desire to study the Bible you may already be dried up and the world will eventually consume you.

You may also want to consider another possibility. If you have no desire to hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture, and you rarely pray or pray for a couple minutes each day you may not be born from above. You may have made a false profession of faith. That is why Paul encouraged the believers in Corinth to examine their faith:

Test yourselves to see if you are in the faith; examine yourselves! Or do you not recognize this about yourselves, that Jesus Christ is in you-unless indeed you fail the test? (2 Corinthians 13.5)

There are millions of people, throughout history, who truly believed they were saved by grace through faith in Jesus Christ, but they were not. On judgment day millions will

proclaim their faith and the works they did in the name of Jesus yet He will cast them away:

“Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven will enter. Many will say to Me on that day, ‘Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name perform many miracles?’ And then I will declare to them, ‘I never knew you; DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.’” (Matthew 7.21-23)

The way to know for certain that your confession of faith was real is by your fruits. Do you have a powerful desire to know God and Jesus? Do you hunger and thirst for Their Word? Do you hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on Their Word daily? Do you pray always? Do you desire to fellowship with the brethren more than once a week? Are you eager to share the Gospel with the lost?

Do you hate sin? Do you hate worldly movies and television shows that depict every sin imaginable? Do you hate worldly music that glorifies the Devil, drugs alcohol, sex, etc.? Do you hate and not go to concerts where people are high on drugs and alcohol? Do you hate partying, and not go to parties where there is drinking, smoking and drugs? Do you hate and not go to night clubs? Do you hate gambling and avoid it? Do you rarely envy the wicked?

If you answer no to just one of those questions you may not be truly born from above. Your profession of faith may have been a false profession. If you are certain you are born from above but have a problem with any of the above noted sins you need to pray fervently every day, study the Bible daily and find a church where the brethren can help you gain victory over your sins.

Take this course at your own pace. Start with Step 1 and continue until you finish Step 10. If you can go further do so, and if you have been called to be a pastor complete the entire

course. Make sure to take the Final Exam (p. 169) once you finish Step 10.

If you are serious about being a faithful *disciple* of Jesus Christ consider a special secret in the Bible:

I have more insight than all my teachers, for Your testimonies are my meditation. (Psalm 119:99)

If you want to know and understand more than all of your spiritual teachers meditate on Scripture as much as possible every day.

Read as many chapters of Scripture as much as possible and pray. Read one or more chapters in the Bible when you wake up. Take Bible breaks whenever possible. If you take eight five-minute Bible breaks each day you can read eight or more chapters a day. End each day in prayer and a chapter or more of the Bible.

Study the Bible every day. Set up a study program and spend 30 minutes, one hour or all day studying the Bible. Take a book of the Bible and study through it. You can also do topical studies.

Memorize Scripture. Choose your favorite verses and write them out on flash cards (3 x 5 cards or business cards). Get blank business cards and write the verses on them. Keep them with you and when you have a spare moment take them out and memorize or review them. If you memorize one verse a week you will have hid 52 verses in your heart after a year. Never stop memorizing Scripture.

Meditate on Scripture. Try to find time every day to meditate on Scripture. Early in the morning when you wake up is a good time. Some believers have a daily quiet time. They read several verses and then meditate on them asking, "What is God trying to tell me." You can also meditate on Scripture as you wait to fall asleep. After you have prayed and read Scripture meditate on a specific passage or topic.

More tips on reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture can be found in Steps 6, 11, 12, 15 and 16.

If you want to know as much about the Bible as possible and if you want to be filled with wisdom study the Bible daily. Ask for wisdom and understanding (James 1.5), and let the Holy Spirit teach you (1 John 2.27). Remember, there is no mystery, doctrine or passage in the Bible that a true believer cannot understand if he seeks to understand it. The Holy Spirit searches the depths of God (1 Corinthians 2.10), and He can give us everything the Father wants us to know. Since we have the “*mind of Christ*” we can know everything Jesus knows:

For WHO HAS KNOWN THE MIND OF THE LORD, THAT HE WILL INSTRUCT HIM? But we have the mind of Christ. (1 Corinthians 2.16)

The cults take discipleship seriously. They make sure their devotees are thoroughly indoctrinated into their heresies and are capable of sharing them with others. The Mormons and Jehovah Witnesses are masters at proselytizing while most Protestant churches have no evangelism program and very few have a discipleship program. Is it no wonder the cults are growing while the true churches are shrinking?

Every believer “*shall give account of himself to God*” (Romans 14.12). We all want to hear the words from Him, “*Well done, good and faithful slave*” (Matthew 25.21). Be a faithful *disciple*.

If you think being sold out to God is not important and you can live your life the way you want to doing whatever pleases you, meditate on the following passages:

*Or do you not know that your **body is the temple of the Holy Spirit** who is in you, whom you have from God, and you are not your own? For you have been bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body. (1 Corinthians 6.19-20)*

*Then Jesus said to his disciples, “If any man wishes to come after Me, let him **deny himself**, and **take up his cross**, and **follow Me**. (Matthew 16.24)*

*So therefore, no one of you can be My disciple who **does not give up all his own possessions.** (Luke 14.33)*

*Jesus said to him, “If you wish to be complete, go and **sell your possessions and give to the poor,** and you shall have treasure in heaven; and come, **follow me.** (Matthew 19.21)*

*“If anyone comes to Me, and does not **hate his own father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters,** yes, and even **his own life,** he cannot be My disciple. Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after Me cannot be My disciple. (Luke 14.26-27)*

*Whether, then, you eat or drink or whatever you do, **do all to the glory of God.** (1 Corinthians 10.31)*

*Therefore I urge you, brethren, by the mercies of God, to present **your bodies a living and holy sacrifice,** acceptable to God, which is your spiritual service of worship. And **do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind,** so that you may prove what the will of God is, that which is good and acceptable and perfect. (Romans 12.1-2)*

*More than that, **I count all things to be loss** in view of the surpassing value of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and **count them but rubbish** so that I may gain Christ. (Philippians 3.8)*

Do you consider all of your worldly goods to be nothing but rubbish? Do you consider your career, home, bank account, stocks, bonds, cars, planes, boats, motorcycles, art collection, jewelry, clothing, gold and silver stash, guns and other valuables to be rubbish? Or are some or all of these worldly things more important to you than serving God with all of your heart, soul, mind and body? Do you spend more time playing with your worldly goods or serving the Lord?

Do you believe you were bought with a price – the blood of Jesus Christ and that you are not your own boss?

Do you believe you should deny yourself, take up your cross, and follow Jesus?

Do you believe you must forsake all that you are and have to be a disciple of Jesus?

Do you believe that you must at least be willing to sell all that you have to be His disciple?

Do you believe you must love God more than your family and yourself to be His disciple?

Do you believe that everything you do should be done for the glory of God?

Do you believe you should present your body as a living sacrifice and not be conformed to the world? Do you believe you must be transformed by the renewing your mind daily through prayer and the study of the Bible?

If you believe these things then do them. Completing this discipleship course is a step in doing these things.

Every believer “*shall give account of himself to God*” (Romans 14.12). We all want to hear the words from Him, “*Well done, good and faithful slave*” (Matthew 25.21). Be a faithful *disciple*.

Meditate on these passages to see how you can be a faithful *disciple* of your Lord and Savior Jesus Christ:

“His master said to him, ‘Well done, good and faithful slave: you were faithful with a few things, I will put you in charge of many things, enter into the joy of your master.’” (Matthew 25.21)

Holy living

*Now those who belong to Christ Jesus have **crucified the flesh with the passions and desires**.* (Galatians 5.24)

*But put on the Lord Jesus Christ, and **make not provision for the flesh in regard to its lusts**.* (Romans 13.14)

*Beloved, I urge you as aliens and pilgrims to **abstain from fleshly lusts**, which war against the soul. (1 Peter 2.11)*

*Therefore, since Christ has suffered in the flesh, arm yourselves also with the same purpose, because he who has **suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin**, so as to live the rest of his time **in the flesh no longer to the lusts of men, but for the will of God.** (1 Peter 4.1-2)*

Charity

*Since you have in obedience to the truth purified your souls for a sincere love of the brethren, **fervently love one another with a pure heart fervently.** (1 Peter 1.22)*

*Now we who are strong **ought to bear the weak of the weak, and not to please ourselves.** (Romans 15.1)*

***Contributing to the needs of saints, practicing hospitality.** (Romans 12.13)*

*We know love by this, that He laid down His life for us; and we **ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.** But whoever has the world's goods, and sees his brother in need and **closes his heart** against him, how does the love of God abide in him? Little children, **let us not love with word or with tongue, but in deed and truth.** (1 John 3.16-18)*

*Our people must also **learn to engage in good deeds** to meet pressing needs, so that they will not be unfruitful. (Titus 3.14)*

Spiritual fitness

Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, accurately handling the word of truth. (2 Timothy 2.15)

Now these were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so. (Acts 17.11)

But He answered and said, “It is written, ‘MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF GOD.’” (Matthew 4.4)

“These words, which I am commanding you today, shall be on your heart. You shall teach them diligently to your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up.” (Deuteronomy 6.6-7)

There are a few basic things that a believer in Jesus Christ must do to become a faithful *disciple*:

1. Live a holy life denying worldly pleasures.
2. Meet the needs of needy fellow believers and unsaved.
3. Do basic good works for the brethren and the unsaved.
4. Become an active member of a church or fellowship.
5. Develop a spiritual fitness program.
6. Be disciplined.
7. Make disciples.

Go through this course as far as you can and become a faithful disciple of Jesus Christ so you will hear Him say to you when you go home to be with Him forever:

*“His master said to him, ‘**Well done, good and faithful slave.** You were faithful with a few things, I will put you in charge of many things; enter into the joy of your master.’” (Matthew 25.21)*

INTRODUCTORY QUIZ

Take this beginner's quiz. If you do poorly you need to start right away. If you do well you need to start right away so you can learn how to disciple others.

1. Everyone is conceived and born in sin.
2. No one seeks God apart from His drawing a person.
3. Those who die in their sins get a second chance to be saved.
4. Everyone who dies in their sins will be cast into the Lake of Fire.
5. Those that are cast into the Lake of Fire are punished in that place through all eternity with no hope of parole, pardon or escape.
6. The descriptions of Hell and the Lake of Fire are symbolic.
7. Salvation is by _____ through _____ in Jesus Christ alone apart from baptism, works, church membership or anything else.
8. Members of other religions can be saved if they are sincere in their faith.
9. One who is saved must keep his salvation by abiding in Jesus Christ.

10. Reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture every day is important for pastors and Bible teachers, but not the average believer.

11. Parents are not responsible for teaching the Bible to their children. That should be left to the church that has trained pastors and Bible teachers.

12. Every believer should know how to study and teach the Bible.

13. Every believer should know what his spiritual gifts are and should be using them.

14. The commands to make disciples of people in all nations, and to preach the Gospel to everyone on Earth was given to the Apostles, pastors and evangelists. It was not given to every believer.

15. Every true believer in Jesus Christ is a *disciple*.

16. List the eleven things a true *disciple* does every day or on a regular basis

17. If one does not read the Bible daily can his prayers become an abomination to God?

INTRODUCTORY QUIZ

ANSWERS

1. Everyone is conceived and born in sin. (**True**)
(Psalm 51.5)
2. No one seeks God apart from His drawing a person.
(**True**) (Psalm 14.1-3; 51.1-4; Romans 3.11)
3. Those who die in their sins get a second chance to be saved. (**False**) (Hebrews 9.27)
4. Everyone who dies in their sins will be cast into the Lake of Fire. (**True**) (Revelation 20.11-15)
5. Those who are cast into the Lake of Fire are punished through all eternity with no hope of parole, pardon or escape.
(**True**) (Matthew 25.46; Revelation 14.9-11)
6. The descriptions of Hell and the Lake of Fire are symbolic.
(**False**)
7. Salvation is by **grace** through **faith** in **Jesus alone** apart from baptism, works, church membership or anything else.
(**True**) (Romans 4.3-9; 11.6; Ephesians 2.8-9)
8. Members of other religions can be saved if they are sincere in their faith. (**False**) (John 14.6; Acts 4.12)
9. A believer must keep his salvation by abiding in Jesus Christ. (**False**) (John 5.24; 6.37-40; 10.28-29; Romans 8.38-39; 1 John 5.11-13)
10. Reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture every day is important for pastors and Bible

teachers, but not the average believer. (**False**) (Deuteronomy 17.19; Acts 17.11; 2 Timothy 2.15; Deut. 6.6; Psalm 1.2)

11. Parents are not responsible for teaching the Bible to their children. That should be left to the church that has trained pastors and Bible teachers. (**False**) (Deuteronomy 6.6-7)

12. Every believer should know how to study and teach the Bible. (**True**) (Dt. 6.6-7; Prov. 6.20; Acts 17.11; 2 Tim. 2.15)

13. Every believer should know what his spiritual gifts are and should be using them. (**True**) (Romans 12.6-8; 1 Cor 12.8-10)

14. The commands to make disciples of people in all nations and preach the Gospel to all nations was given to the Apostles, pastors and evangelists. It was not given to every believer. (**False**) (Matthew 28.19-20; Acts 1.8)

15. Every true believer in Jesus Christ is a *disciple*. (**True**) (Acts 6.1-2)

16. List the eleven things a true *disciple* does every day or on a regular basis:

1. Pray throughout each day.
2. Listen to Scripture.
3. Read Scripture.
4. Study Scripture.
5. Memorize Scripture.
6. Meditate on Scripture.
7. Fellowship with the brethren.
8. Worship YAHWEH.
9. Share the Gospel.
10. Be discipled.
11. Make disciples.

17. If one does not read the Bible daily can his prayers become an abomination to God? (**Yes!**) (Proverbs 28.9)

DISCIPLESHIP COURSE

Follow this course at your own pace. Go as far as you can.

I. Buy a Bible and the books you will need to study the Bible (p. 39).

Completed _____

II. Study the Gospel as presented on page 41 and memorize the verses for the long or short Gospel presentation so you can share it with the lost. If you have not trusted Jesus Christ to save you do so right now. Go to Step 2.

Completed _____

III. Carefully study the salvation passages listed to have a full understanding of the Gospel (p. 45).

Completed _____

IV. Take the “Faith Check” and keep it handy (p. 47).

Completed _____

V. Find a discipleship partner (p. 53).

Completed _____

VI. Set up your “Spiritual Fitness” program (p. 55).

Completed _____

VII. Study the lesson on prayer (p. 59).

Completed _____

VIII. Study the lesson on the “Wiles of the devil” (p. 63).

Completed _____

IX. Study the lesson on the “Armor of God” (p. 81).

Completed _____

X. Study the “Discipleship Teaching” outline on page 197. Then complete the “Discipleship Study Questions” starting on page 89.

Completed _____

XI. Memorize as many verses as you can and do the meditation exercises (p. 115).

Completed _____

XII. Learn how to do an exegetical study (p. 123).

Completed _____

XIII. Do exegetical studies of the sanctification passages (p. 127).

Completed _____

XIV. Do exegetical studies of the misunderstood passages (p. 129).

Completed _____

XV. Start exegetical studies of books (p. 133).

Completed _____

XVI. Study the lesson on how to do a topical study (p. 139).

Completed _____

XVII. Start topical studies of the major doctrines (p. 149).

Completed _____

XVIII. Put together your “Statement of Faith” (p. 151).

Completed _____

XIX. Start topical studies that interest you (p. 153).

Completed _____

XX. Learn how to lead a Bible study (p. 157).

Completed _____

XXI. Take the seminary course (p. 161).

Completed _____

XXII. Learn how to shepherd a church (p. 171).

Completed _____

PART ONE

THE BASICS

If you decide to complete the steps in this program set a goal of finishing Steps 1 through 5 in 40 days. The other steps will take years to finish. Stay with them until you are called home to be with the Lord. No believer retires from spiritual warfare. We are all in the fight until we are called home or the Lord returns to take us all home (1 Thessalonians 4.16-18).

STEP ONE

THE TOOLS

Buy a Bible, a pocket New Testament, a Strong's Concordance and a New Testament Interlinear Bible. You can purchase them at most religious bookstores. If you have trouble finding them ask your pastor for help. If you have the money you may want to buy – a Bible handbook, a topical Bible and a Bible dictionary. These tools are invaluable in your study of the Bible.

Buy a good study Bible. The following study Bibles are recommended:

Thompson Chain
Open Bible
Dickson New Analytical Bible
Companion Bible

Decide what translation you want to use and stick with it. The King James, the New King James and the New American Standard Bible (NASB) are the most accurate. The New International Version is not as accurate as the first three. It is a thought-for-thought translation instead of a word-for-word translation as the first three are. Do not use a paraphrase.

STEP TWO

THE GOSPEL

The most important thing any person can ever do is know where he/she will spend eternity. The Creator of the universe said there are only two places where a person can go when he dies – Heaven or Hell:

For all have sinned, and fall short of the glory of God.
(Romans 3.23)

Those who die in their sins will be judged and suffer punishment in the Lake of Fire for all eternity:

And inasmuch as it is appointed for men once to die, and after this comes judgment. (Hebrews 9.27)

And these will go away into eternal punishment: but the righteous into eternal life. (Matthew 25.46)

He who believes in the Son has eternal life; but he who does not obey the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God abides on him. (John 3.36)

And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire. (Revelation 20.15)

All the riches and pleasures of the world are not worth eternal punishment:

For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? Or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul? (Mark 8.36-37)

Yet even though all have sinned, one can escape eternal punishment in the Lake of Fire, and have eternal life through Jesus Christ:

For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Romans 6.23)

Salvation is available to all because:

But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. (Romans 5.8)

In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace. (Ephesians 1.7)

Belief in Jesus Christ is the only way to be saved:

Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me." (John 14.6)

"And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must be saved." (Acts 4.12)

Salvation is by grace through faith in Jesus Christ alone:

For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God; not as a result of works, that no one should boast. (Ephesians 2.8-9)

What must one do to be saved?

*That if you confess with your mouth **Jesus** as Lord, and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you shall be saved: for with the heart man believes, resulting in righteousness, and with the mouth he confesses, resulting in salvation. (Romans 10.9-10)*

If you believe God the Father raised Jesus from the dead, call upon Jesus Christ to save you right now:

*For “**WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED.**” (Romans 10.13)*

Today is your day of salvation:

*Behold, now is “**THE ACCEPTABLE TIME,**” behold, now is “**THE DAY OF SALVATION.**” (2 Corinthians 6.2b)*

Receive Jesus today for you do not know what tomorrow may bring:

But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name. (John 1.12)

Exercise 1

Memorize Matthew 25.46; Mark 8.36-37; John 1.12; 3.16, 36; 14.6; Acts 4.12; Romans 3.23; 5.8; 6.23; 9.9-10; 10.13; 2 Cor. 6.2b; Hebrews 9.27; Revelation 20.15, and learn how to share the Gospel. Print out this Gospel presentation and keep it with you until you are proficient. At times you will forget to take your spiritual sword (Bible) or dagger (New Testament) with you. If you have the key salvation passages memorized you can quote them. (To print out the Gospel presentation go the book’s website – www.makedisciplesofallthenations.com)

You can give it to those you witness to. You should put your name at the bottom and the phone number of the church you attend. Try to get their number if possible. Refrain from

witnessing to a person of the opposite sex. If the Holy Spirit compels you to do **not** ask for their number, and do **not** give them yours. Give them the church number.

Short Gospel presentation

Memorizing all 17 verses of the Gospel may be too hard to begin with. If so memorize the 7 verses below and become proficient in the short Gospel presentation. Once you master it memorize the rest.

Everyone is a sinner in need of salvation:

For all have sinned, and fall short of the glory of God.
(Romans 3.23)

Those who die in their sins will be judged:

And inasmuch as it is appointed for men once to die, and after this comes judgment. (Hebrews 9.27)

Yet even though all have sinned, one can escape eternal punishment in the Lake of Fire, and have eternal life through Jesus Christ:

For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Romans 6.23)

Salvation is available to all:

But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. (Romans 5.8)

Belief in Jesus Christ apart from works is the only way to be saved:

Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me." (John 14.6)

For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of God; not as a result of works, so that no one may boast. (Ephesians 2.8-9)

If you believe God the Father raised Jesus from the dead, call upon Jesus Christ to save you right now:

For “WHOEVER WILL CALL ON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED.” (Romans 10.13)



“Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.” (Matthew 28.19-20)

STEP THREE

GOSPEL PASSAGES TO STUDY

The following passages dealing with the Gospel should be studied carefully so you have a full understanding of the Gospel.

John	1.12-13 3.1-18, 36 4.10-14 5.24, 38-39 6.29, 35-40, 44-58, 63-71 7.5, 38-39 8.24 10.27-30 14.6 17.3 20.31
Acts	2.37-38 15.9-11
Romans	3.19-31 4.1-11 5.6-11, 15-21 6.23 9.30-10.4 10.9-13, 17
1 Corinthians	15.1-4

Galatians	2.16 3.1-14, 23-29
Ephesians	2.8-10
Titus	3.5-6
Hebrews	9.11-15, 22, 27 10.10
1 Peter	1.18, 23
1 John	5.10-13

STEP FOUR

FAITH CHECK

Are you being conformed to the image of Jesus Christ?

For those whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, so that He would be the firstborn among many brethren. (Romans 8:29)

Are you being conformed to the image of Jesus Christ? Has there been a noticeable change in your likes and dislikes since you trusted Jesus to save you?

Therefore I urge you, brethren, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies a living and holy sacrifice, acceptable to God, which is your spiritual service of worship. And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, so that you may prove what the will of God is, that which is good and acceptable and perfect. (Romans 12:1-2)

Everyone who is truly born from above will change. You will stop doing certain things and start doing things you did not do previously. Your thought life will also change.

To determine whether something is good (honoring to God) pray, read the Bible and ask yourself if Jesus would join you.

There are a few things we know are not of God, and must be avoided at all costs – illegal drugs and getting drunk.

And do not get drunk with wine, for that is dissipation, but be filled with the Spirit. (Ephesians 5.18)

The next time you listen to secular music, watch television and movies ask yourself if you think Jesus would enjoy spending the day listening to that music and watching those shows and movies. Not all movies and television shows are bad. Exercise great discernment in watching them. Stick to news and documentaries. The next time you watch a Hollywood production imagine Jesus is sitting next to you. Do you think He would sit through a Hollywood trash movie or television show? By the way, Jesus is with you at all times. Think about it!

The Spiritual Man versus the Natural Man

Take a few minutes out of your busy schedule and examine your daily walk with Jesus.

Spiritual Activities	Average time spent weekly
Prayer	_____
Reading and studying the Bible	_____
Memorization and meditation	_____
Worship and devotions with family	_____
Fellowship with believers	_____
Giving to and helping others	_____
Sharing the Gospel	_____
Being disciplined/making disciples	_____
Total time serving Jesus	_____

Worldly activities**Average time spent weekly**

Watching TV and movies

Internet

Reading (secular books/magazines)

Hobbies

Recreation

Attending sporting events

Socializing (in person or by phone)

Shopping

Other non-spiritual activities

Total time serving yourself

Sleeping, eating, moderate exercise and working are not on this list because they are pursuits of the flesh that are necessary for survival. It is your free time that you are to examine. All believers should spend more of their free time each day feeding their soul than feeding their flesh. Sadly, few do that. Worse yet, few believers spend more time feeding their souls than they do eating.

If you spend less time in spiritual activities (feeding your soul) than you do in eating (feeding your flesh) you are backslidden. Since all believers take time to feed our flesh should we take an equal amount of time feeding our soul?

If you spend more time each day exercising the flesh than you do exercising your soul which is more important to you – your sinful body or your eternal soul?

Exercise

Take this faith check once a month for the first year and then take it every few months or so. This will help you see your progress of maturing in the Lord.

Make several copies for your use and for others. You can go to www.makedisciplesofallthenations.com and print out the “Faith Check.”

Be filled with the Spirit

And do not get drunk with wine, for that is dissipation, but be filled with the Spirit. (Ephesians 5.18)

Believers are not to be intoxicated (drunk) with wine and in like manner to not get “high” with drugs (legal or illegal). Instead we are to “*be filled with the Spirit.*” What does it mean to “*be filled with the Spirit*”? Does it mean we must have a “second blessing” in which the Holy Spirit empowers us to do the work of the Lord?

Scripture does not say that before we can be “*filled*” or empowered with by the Holy Spirit we must have a special “second blessing.” Instead it is a daily activity. It is something we do when we first awake and then throughout the day.

The first thing to do when we wake up is ask the Holy Spirit to fill us and lead us that day. Prayer at the beginning of a day makes it go by more smoothly. Prayer gets us in the proper attitude so we can let our light shine throughout the entire day. The second thing we can do is spend time in the Word. A quiet time in the Word when we first get up fills us with the Word. Being filled with the Word and the Holy Spirit is the same thing because the words that Jesus spoke are “*spirit*” and “*life*” (John 6.63). Not only are the words that He spoke “*spirit*” and “*life*” but all Scripture:

All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness; so that the man of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work. (2 Timothy 3.16-17)

We all need to pray throughout the day (1 Thessalonians 5.17). Continual prayer keeps our mind set on the things above and not the things of this sin-filled world (Colossians 3.2). We also need to be filled with the Word several times throughout the day. Taking Bible breaks is vital to be continually “*filled*” with the Holy Spirit. If you can take a Bible or New Testament with you try to read a chapter a few times during the day. If you cannot take a Bible with you to work or when you are out you can meditate on Scripture that you have memorized. When you hide the Word of God in your heart you always have it with you to meditate on.

By praying several times a day and taking Bible breaks one can be continually “*filled*” with the Holy Spirit. The more often we feed on Scripture and pray the more we will grow. Babies would die within a few days if they were not given food. The same is true of newborn believers. If they are not given spiritual food they die spiritually. The more spiritual food they receive the faster and stronger they grow. One or two twenty minute sermons each week may keep a believer alive spiritually, but that is life-support nourishment. To grow into a strong, mature and vital disciple one must feed on Scripture every day. All believers need to listen, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture daily and wash the Word down with lots of prayer.

If you want to be a disciplined and dedicated disciple of Jesus you must be a spiritual glutton, feeding on the holy Word of God throughout each day and praying always. Instead of being a glutton of physical food, be a glutton of spiritual food.

STEP FIVE

DISCIPLESHIP PARTNER

Find a discipleship partner of the same sex (if single and not engaged) who can hold you accountable and encourage you. You can find one at church, but be careful. If the church you attend does not have a discipleship program give the pastors a copy of this book and encourage them to start one. If they do not start one give careful consideration to finding a church that has one. If you cannot find a church that has a discipleship program look for a home Bible study. If you find one make sure the teacher knows the Bible and can teach.

If you are engaged or married ask your spouse or future spouse to be your discipleship partner. If your spouse is not saved find a spiritual partner of the same sex. If you are engaged to an unsaved person call it off:

*A wife is bound as long as her husband lives; but if her husband is dead, she is free to be married to whom she wishes, **only in the Lord**. (1 Corinthians 7.39)*

PART TWO

STUDY TO SHOW YOURSELF APPROVED

Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, accurately handling the word of truth. (2 Timothy 2.15)

Now these were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so. (Acts 17.11)

Steps 6 through 10 are a bit harder than the first five, but every believer should be able to complete them.



TREASURE HUNT

Everyone dreams of finding hidden treasure and millions have search for it throughout the last 6,000 years with thousands finding it. Yet every true believer in YAHSHUA Messiah has the incredible privilege of spending their entire life searching for hidden treasure that is much more valuable than all the hidden treasure on the Earth! In fact the unimaginable hidden treasure that we are commanded to search for is far more valuable than all the minerals, oil, gas, water, gold, silver, precious gems, art, stocks, bonds, corporations, buildings, land livestock and animals on Earth! It is more valuable than the planet and the entire universe!

If you have not begun your search for the greatest treasure in the Cosmos order your copy of *Treasure Hunt* today. Email the DOV Book Shoppe – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP SIX

SPIRITUAL FITNESS PROGRAM

Every believer needs to set up a Spiritual Fitness Program (SFP) to grow in faith. Without one a believer will be tossed to and fro by every wind of doctrine (Ephesians 4.14). Here several things every believer should consider doing on a daily and regular basis:

1. **Pray** (Deuteronomy 9.25-26; 1 Samuel 15.11; 1 Chronicles 16.11; Psalm 88.9; Proverbs 15.29; Isaiah 56.7; Matthew 5.44; 6.5-6; 7.7-11; 26.41; Luke 11.5-10; 18.1-8; John 14.13-14; 15.16; 16.24; Acts 1.14; 2.42; 4.31; 6.4; 1 Corinthians 7.5; Ephesians 6.18; Philippians 4.6; Colossians 4.2; 1 Thessalonians 5.17; 1 Timothy 2.1-2; 5.5; 2 Timothy 2.8; James 1.5; 1 Peter 3.7).
2. **Listen** to Scripture (Deuteronomy 4.10; Proverbs 8.34; 22.17; 23.12; Luke 8.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Revelation 1.3).
3. **Read** Scripture (Deuteronomy 17.19; Isaiah 34.16; Revelation 1.3).
4. **Study** Scripture (Proverbs 2.1-5; 8.34; John 5.39; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15).

5. **Memorize** Scripture (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Romans 10.8; Colossians 3.16).
6. **Meditate** on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; Colossians 3.16).
7. **Fellowship** with the brethren (Psalm 22.22; 119.63; Proverbs 13.20; Acts 2.42, 46-47; 5.42; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25; 1 John 1.7).
8. **Worship** with your family, the brethren and privately (Deuteronomy 6.13; 26.10; 1 Chronicles 16.29; Psalm 2.11; 29.2; 96.9; 99.5, 9; 132.7; Jeremiah 7.2; Matthew 4.10; John 4.23-24; Romans 12.1; Philippians 3.3; Revelation 4.10; 14.17; 19.10; 22.9)
9. **Share the Gospel** (Psalm 9.1; 26.7; 35.28; 96.2; Proverbs 11.30; Mark 16.15; Acts 2.47; 1 Peter 3.15).
10. **Be disciplined** (Proverbs 1.8; 4.1; 6.20; Eph. 4.11-13).
11. **Make disciples** (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; 6.5-7; 11.18-19; 31.13; 32.46; Psalm 78.3-7; Proverbs 1.8; 4.1; 6.20; 22.6; Joel 1.3; Matt. 28.19-20; Ephesians 4.11-13; 6.4; 2 Tim. 2.2).

1. **PRAY:** Pray often for your family, friends, fellow employees, employer, church members, pastors, and city, state and federal politicians. Pray with your family daily and with church members on a regular basis. Begin and end each day in prayer, and pray throughout the day. Pray that YAHWEH teach you each day as you study His word.

2. **LISTEN TO SCRIPTURE:** Play recordings of the Bible and listen to sermons and Bible studies.

3. **READ SCRIPTURE:** Make a reading program and stay with it. If you read three chapters a day in the Old Testament and one in the New Testament you will read the Bible through in one year. It is also important to read one chapter of Proverbs each day. It does not take more than a half-hour a day to read five chapters. If you watch TV have your Bible handy and read a chapter during commercial breaks. Anyone could read ten chapters a day by just taking a Bible break during commercials.

4. **STUDY SCRIPTURE:** Choose a book of the Bible or a topic to study, and stay with it until you finish it.

5. **MEMORIZE SCRIPTURE:** Memorize key verses from both the Old and New Testaments.

6. **MEDITATE ON SCRIPTURE:** Once you have a few verses memorized you can meditate on them any time of the day, and wherever you are. Until then keep a pocket Bible or pocket New Testament handy. Keep a Bible and a few New Testaments in your car at all times for yourself and others. Get into the habit of giving out Bibles and pocket New Testaments.

7. **FELLOWSHIP WITH THE BRETHREN:** Become an active member of a church. Support the church with your time, talents, treasure and spiritual gifts. If you cannot find a real church meet with believers in a home.

8. **WORSHIP:** It is so important that there are more commands to worship YAHWEH than to pray, study the Bible, memorize Scripture or meditate on the Word. Every believer should spend time each day worshipping YAHWEH. We worship YAHWEH by being silent and meditating on the blessings He has given you; by thanking and praising Him by rejoicing and singing.

9. **SHARE THE GOSPEL:** Once you learn how to share the Gospel be ready to do so 24/7. Be sensitive to the leading of the HOLY SPIRIT to share the Gospel. Carry tracts with you

and hand them out as you are prompted by the HOLY SPIRIT. If the person(s) wants to talk – speak with them, but if they do not want to talk ask them to read the tract, and pray as you walk away. Keep a diary of your witnessing. When you lead someone to the Lord invite them to church and make sure they become an active member. If you are not mature enough to disciple them ask your pastor(s) to find someone to disciple them.

10. **BE DISCIPLED:** Find someone to disciple you or find a good book on discipleship such as *Make Disciples of all the Nations*.

11. **MAKE DISCIPLES:** Once you have been discipled, start to disciple others. If you are a husband disciple your wife. If you are a father disciple your children. If you are a mother disciple your children with your husband. If you are single lead a person to the Lord and disciple him/her. Never disciple a person of the opposite sex unless you are engaged.

If a believer develops a discipline in these basics of holy living he will become a *disciple* of Jesus Christ. It does not happen overnight. It takes many years to become a mature *disciple*, but it starts with the daily discipline of being in prayer, in the Word and in regular fellowship with other believers.

Pray in the morning, throughout the day and before you go to sleep. Set up a daily Bible reading program. If you read 4 chapters a day you will read through the Bible in a year. Read 3 chapters in the Old Testament each day and 1 chapter in the New Testament. Buy an audio copy of the Bible, and listen to it at home and in the car. Buy DVDs of movies about the Bible and watch them often (*The Gospel of John, Peter and Paul, The Greatest Story Ever Told, King of Kings*, etc.). Memorize Scripture. If you memorize one verse a week you will have 52 verses memorized in one year. Meditate on Scripture and let the Holy Spirit teach you. Learn how to share the gospel. Ask your pastor to train you, and then share your personal testimony and the gospel as the Lord leads.

As you grow in the Lord you will pray more, and listen to, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture more and more. You will share your gospel more often, and spend more time in fellowship with other believers.

STEP SEVEN

PRAYER

Teaching outline

- I. It is our spiritual duty and need to pray daily.
 - A. Prayer is one of the two basic daily activities of all believers.
 - B. Reading, hearing, studying, memorizing or meditating on Scripture is the other daily activity all believers are to engage in.

- II. Pray throughout the day.
 - A. We are commanded to pray always (1 Chronicles 16.11; Ephesians 6.18; 1 Thessalonians 5.17; 1 Timothy 5.5).
 - 1. We have the example of Paul (Colossians 1.3; 2 Timothy 1.3).
 - 2. We have the example of Timothy (Colossians 1.3).
 - B. Praying always is to be in constant communication with the Lord.
 - 1. We should make brief requests while on the go.
 - 2. We should also pray privately on our knees as the Lord and the Apostles did (Luke 5.16; 6.12; 22.41; Acts 9.40; 20.36; 21.5).

- III. We pray according to the will of God (1 John 5.14-15).
 - A. We can know His will by studying Scripture.
 - B. We can know His will by praying in the Holy Spirit (Jude 20; Ephesians 6.18).

IV. We are to pray to:

- A. The Father (Matthew 6.8-13; John 14.13; 15.16).
- B. The Son (John 14.14).

V. We should pray with:

- A. Our spouse (1 Corinthians 7.5).
- B. Our children (1 Thessalonians 5.17; Deut. 6.6-7).
- C. The brethren (Isaiah 56.7; Acts 1.14; 4.31).

VI. What prayer should consist of:

- A. Praise (Psalm 35.28; 51.15; Heb. 13.15; 1 Peter 2.9).
- B. Thanksgiving.
 - 1. To God for His blessings (Ephesians 5.20; Colossians 3.17; Philippians 4.6; 1 Thess. 5.18).
 - 2. To God for people (1 Timothy 2.1).
- C. Petitions for the brethren (Daniel 9.20; Ephesians 6.18; Philippians 1.3-4; Colossians 1.9-12; 1 Timothy 2.8).
- D. Petitions for the lost (1 Timothy 2.1-2).
- E. Petitions for yourself (1 Samuel 1.27; Psalm 25.4-5; Matthew 7.7-11; Matt. 26.41; John 16.24; James 5.13).
- F. How often we should pray for a specific thing (Luke 18.1-8).
- G. We should agonize in our prayers (Deuteronomy 9.25; 1 Samuel 15.11; Luke 22.44; Acts 10.30; 1 Corinthians 7.5; Hebrews 5.7; James 5.16).
- H. How we get our prayers answered yes (Prov 28.9; Jer. 29.13; Mark 11.24; John 15.7; 1 John 3.22; 5.14-15).
- I. Some prayers are answered no (2 Corinthians 12.7-10).
- J. Keep public prayer brief (Ecclesiastes 5.2; Matthew 6.7; 23.14).

Why pray

If you do not know why prayer is important prayerfully these scriptures will help you understand the importance of prayer:

*The LORD said to him, “**I have heard your prayer and your supplication, which you have made before Me; I have consecrated this house which you have built by putting My name there forever, and My eyes and My heart will be there perpetually.**” (1 Kings 9.3)*

*“Yet have regard to the **prayer of Your servant** and to his supplication, O LORD my God, to listen to the cry and to the **prayer which Your servant prays before You** that Your eye may be open toward this house day and night, toward the place of which You have said that You would put Your name there, to **listen to the prayer which Your servant shall pray toward this place.**” (2 Chronicles 6.19-20)*

*“Also concerning the foreigner who is not from Your people Israel, when he comes from a far country for Your great name's sake and Your mighty hand and Your outstretched arm, when they come and **pray** toward this house then hear from heaven, from Your dwelling place, and do according to all for which the foreigner calls to You, in order that all the peoples of the earth may know Your name, and fear You as do Your people Israel, and that they may know that this house which I have built is called by Your name.” (1 Chronicles 6.32-33)*

*“And My people who are called by My name humble themselves and **pray and seek My face** and turn from their wicked ways, then **I will hear from heaven**, will forgive their sin and will heal their land. Now **My eyes will be open and My ears attentive to the prayer offered in this place.** For now I have chosen and consecrated this house that **My name may be there forever**, and My eyes and My heart will be there perpetually.” (1 Chronicles 7.14-16)*

*Then the Levitical priests arose and blessed the people; and **their voice was heard and their prayer came to His holy dwelling place, to heaven.** (2 Chronicles 30.27)*

*O You who **hear prayer**, To You all men come. (Psalm 65.2)*

*But certainly **God has heard**; He has given heed to the voice of my **prayer**. (Psalm 66.19)*

*My eye has wasted away because of affliction; **I have called upon You every day, O LORD**; I have spread out my hands to You. (Psalm 88.9)*

*He has regarded the **prayer** of the destitute And has not despised their **prayer**. (Psalm 102.17)*

The sacrifice of the wicked is an abomination to the LORD, But the prayer of the upright is His delight. (Proverbs 15.8)

The LORD is far from the wicked, But **He hears the prayer of the righteous**. (Proverbs 15.29)

*“Go and say to Hezekiah, ‘Thus says the LORD, the God of your father David, “**I have heard your prayer**, I have seen your tears; behold, I will add fifteen years to your life.’”” (Isaiah 38.5)*

*“But this kind does not go out except by **prayer** and fasting.” (Matthew 7.21)*

*“And all things you **ask in prayer**, believing, you will receive.” (Matthew 21.22)*

Jesus prayed

If Jesus needed to pray we certainly need to and much more than He did.

*It was at this time that **He** went off to the mountain to pray, and **He** spent the whole night in prayer to God.* (Luke 6.12)

*And He withdrew from them about a stone's throw, and **He knelt down and began to pray**, saying, "Father, if You are willing, remove this cup from Me; yet not My will, but Yours be done." Now an angel from heaven appeared to Him, strengthening Him. And being in agony **He was praying very fervently**; and His sweat became like drops of blood, falling down upon the ground. **When He rose from prayer**, He came to the disciples and found them sleeping from sorrow, and said to them, "Why are you sleeping? Get up and pray that you may not enter into temptation." (Luke 22.41-46)*

Do a detailed study of the Lord's Prayer (John 17). It is extremely edifying. You can pray 24 hours a day, but if you stop studying the Bible or spend very little time in the Word your prayers are an ABOMINATION to God:

He who turns away his ear from listening to the law, Even his prayer is an abomination. (Proverbs 28.9)

We need a balance between prayer and Bible study. It is more important to listen to God than to talk to Him. The ratio is different for everyone, but Bible study should be a minimum of 60 percent of your study/prayer time.

Types of Prayer

The three types of prayer are praise, intercession and personal requests. These three types of prayer can be short prayers or lengthy ones. We are commanded to be devoted to prayer (Romans 12.12; Colossians 4.2; 1 Peter 4.7) which means we need to spend time every day in private prayer on our knees, and in prayer on the go. We are also to pray with others (Acts 2.42; 13.3; 16.25).

Praise

Praise and thank God every day for the myriad blessings He has and will pour out on you (Ephesians 5.20; 1 Thessalonians 5.18; Hebrews 13.15). Some of the things we can praise God for are – His eternal love (John 3.16; Romans 5.8; 1 John 4.19), His grace which saved us (Ephesians 2.8), His mercy and comfort (2 Corinthians 1.3), His strength that He gives us (Ephesians 3.16; Philippians 4.13), His riches (Ephesians 3.16; Philippians 4.19), His guidance (Proverbs 3.5-6) and His discipline (Proverbs 3.11-12). These are only a few of the blessings that God pours out on us that we can thank Him for daily.

Intercession

Intercessory prayers for other believers (Ephesians 6.18; Philippians 1.4), and for the unsaved (Matthew 5.44; 1 Timothy 2.1-3) is important. Make a habit of making requests on behalf of believers that you know rather than making blanket requests for believers we do not know. Some of the things we can ask for is that God comfort, strengthen, perfect, confirm and establish them (2 Thessalonians 2.16-17; 1 Peter 5.10), increase their wisdom (James 1.5), give them greater courage and boldness in sharing the Gospel (Philippians 1.19-20) and open doors to share the Gospel (Colossians 4.3). We can also pray for the brethren who have special needs (Acts 12.5, 12).

Praying for the salvation of unsaved people we know (Romans 10.1) is vital. We can pray for family, relatives, neighbors, co-workers, employers and employees. We can also pray for the unsaved people in our life and for political leaders so that we may lead a tranquil and quiet life (1 Timothy 2.1-4), in order that we will have more time to share the Gospel with the lost.

Personal Requests

After we have praised the Lord for all He has done for us, have prayed for the brothers and sisters in the Lord and for the lost, we can make personal requests (Philippians 4.6). These requests must be made in accordance with the will of God (1 John 5.14), and God will grant them in His good time (1 John 5.15). We must wait on Him to grant them (Psalm 37.7; 40.1), and not demand that He grant them immediately. We need to refrain from asking for worldly goods such as big houses, fancy cars, stylish clothing, jewelry and toys. Instead we should ask God to meet our needs – food, shelter, clothing, work (Luke 11.3), forgive us our sins, and keep and deliver us from evil (Matthew 6.12-13).

We also need to ask the Holy Spirit to teach us – give us knowledge, understanding and wisdom (Proverbs 1.1-7; 3.13) – as we study Scripture (1 John 2.20, 27). We can pray for boldness to share the gospel with the lost (Philippians 1.19-20). If Paul asked for believers to pray for him to have boldness in sharing the gospel we should also.

Disciples' Prayer

The disciples' Prayer is mistakenly called the Lord's Prayer. To study the Lord's Prayer go to John Chapter 17. We see some fundamental truths in this prayer:

*“Pray, then, in this way: ‘Our Father who is in heaven, Hallowed be Your name. **10** Your kingdom come. Your will be done, On earth as it is in heaven. **11** Give us this day our daily bread. **12** And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. **13** And do not lead us into temptation, but deliver us from evil. [For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.]’*

The first thing all believers should do every day when they wake up is to acknowledge that YAHWEH is Holy (v. 9) and Sovereign (v. 10), and that we should fulfill His will that day – every second of the new day (v. 10).

Next we should ask Him to meet all of our needs for that day (v. 11). Those needs are not just food, water and other physical needs. They include our spiritual needs – faith, hope, love, wisdom, understanding, knowledge, reverence of God, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and self control (1 Corinthians 13.13; Proverbs 2.2; 3.13, 21; 4.5; 5.1; 8.11; 11.2; 16.16; 19.8; 23.23; Proverbs 1.7; 8.10; 10.14; 15.14; 18.15; 22.17; 23.12; Galatians 5.22-23).

Another thing we need to do throughout the day is ask God to forgive us when we sin (v. 12). John wrote of the importance of this (1 John 1.8-10). We ask forgiveness of God and then of the person we sinned against. There is a caveat in forgiveness here. If we do not forgive those who sin against us God will not forgive us (v. 12).

This forgiveness is not forgiveness for salvation. It is temporal forgiveness for fellowship. As long as we do not forgive those who sin against us we do not have fellowship with the Father, Son or the Holy Spirit. We are still saved, but we are living in a backslidden condition and do not have the joy of fellowship with Them.

The statement, “*do not lead us into temptation but deliver us from evil*” is a bad translation. It should be “*do not lead us into trials, but deliver us from the evil one.*” We should daily ask God to not lead us into a trial or trials and to deliver us from the schemes of Satan (Ephesians 6.11). We must also do our part to be delivered from the schemes of the devil by putting on the full armor of God first thing every day (Ephesians 6.10-18).

We should verbally and silently acknowledge throughout each day that God is all sovereign, all powerful and all deserving of all glory (v.13). When we have this attitude about Them we can focus on serving Them fully and then do everything each day for Their glory:

Whether, then, you eat or drink or whatever you do, do all to the glory of God. (1 Corinthians 10.31)

Everything we do in private or public should be done to the glory to God. If you do something on a regular basis that cannot bring glory to God consider giving it up and replacing it with prayer, Bible study, fellowship, discipleship or evangelism. It may not be a “sin” but our time here is short and (James 4.14) we should make every second count.

Remember this eternal truth:

Everything you do for you will be forgotten forever.

Everything you do for God will be remembered forever and you will receive eternal rewards.

The choice is yours:

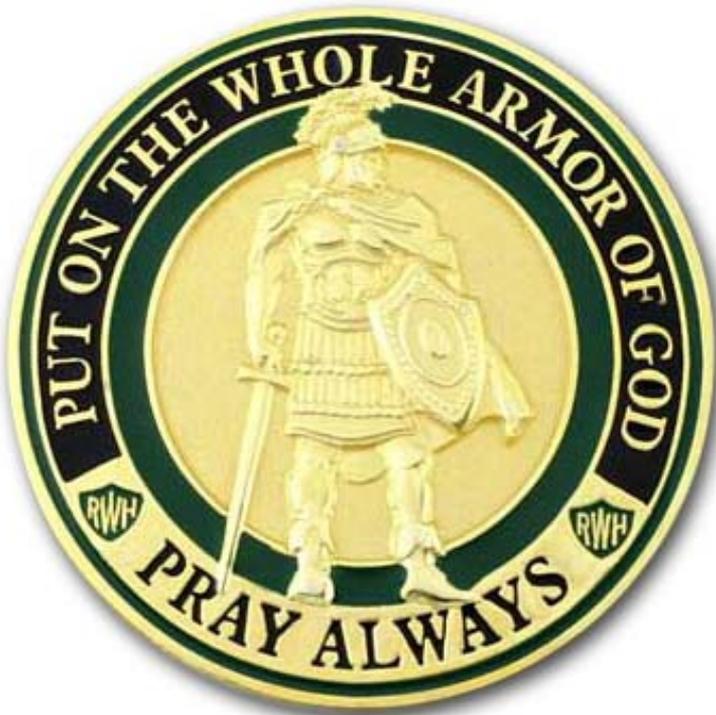
Live for all the gusto you can grab in this life and have nothing or very little in the eternal life to come.

Live for your Lord Jesus Christ and have untold eternal rewards in the life to come along with rank, status and a greater capacity to enjoy eternal life.

If you choose the first or try to do both you need to read *Faith Test* and study this passage carefully:

*“No one can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to one and despise the other. **You cannot serve God and wealth.**” (Matthew 6.24)*

Not everyone who thinks they are saved are born from above and headed to Heaven. Billions of people will stand trial for their sins at the Great White Throne Judgment who truly believed they would be high-ranking saints in Heaven (Matthew 7.21-23; Luke 13.24). They will hear those fateful words that will ring in their ears forever, **“I never knew you; DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.”** (Matthew 7.23b)



BASIC TRAINING

Every true believer is a soldier of YAHSHUA Messiah (2 Timothy 2.3). We are all in this spiritual war 24-7 and we must fight the good fight of faith every day all day and all night long. There are no days off or vacations in this war. Satan and his forces of darkness can attack you at any moment of the day and any place you are. We must put on the full armor of YAHWEH every day and keep it on until we go to sleep.

Every true believer must go through basic training or he will never be a good soldier of YAHSHUA. If the church you are a member of does not have a basic training program this book is for you. To order your copy of *Basic Training* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com



\$4 million home of a Christian TV Network CEO

STEP EIGHT

SCHEMES OF THE DEVIL

The devil and his ministers have thousands of schemes to keep believers from fully serving the Lord. We are commanded to not be ignorant of those schemes and to keep from being sidetracked by them:

*Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of His might. Put on the full armor of God, so that you will be able to stand firm against the **schemes of the devil**. For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the powers, against the world forces of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of wickedness in the heavenly places. (Ephesians 6.10-12)*

Here are the top ten schemes of the devil:

1. Love of money
2. Career/Job

3. Spouse, boyfriend/girlfriend, sex
4. Accumulation of stuff
5. Television, movies, music
6. Sports
7. Unsaved friends
8. Celebrity worship
9. Food
10. Alcohol and drugs

There are many other schemes that the devil and his ministers of evil (2 Corinthians 11.15) use to distract, sidetrack, confuse, deceive, and mislead believers so they cannot serve their Lord and Savior fully.



Love of money

For the love of money is a root of all sorts of evil, and some by longing for it have wandered away from the faith and pierced themselves with many griefs. (1 Timothy 6.10)

The love of money is the most powerful weapon that the rulers of darkness use to keep believers from being dedicated bond servants of Jesus Christ. Virtually everyone in the Western World has a love of money, some more than others. All believers must fight the desire of the flesh to be rich. We

are commanded to replace our natural love of the world and all that is in it with the love of the Father:

Do not love the world nor the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh and the lust of the eyes and the boastful pride of life, is not from the Father, but is from the world. The world is passing away, and also its lusts; but the one who does the will of God lives forever. (1 John 2.15-17)

We need to replace the natural (sinful) love of the world and the things in it with the love of the Father. The way to do that is by being in prayer, in the Word, in fellowship with the brethren, and by sharing the Gospel. It does not happen overnight. It takes decades to replace the love of the world with the love of the Father. It takes dedication, discipline and accountability.

Career/Job

“But seek first His kingdom and His righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.” (Matthew 6.33)

Everyone must work. Paul commanded the pastors of the church in Thessalonica to compel all believers to work. If they refused to work they were not to be given food (2 Thessalonians 3.10).

Yet for too many men and women a career or job becomes the most important thing in their life. They neglect the Lord, their spouse, their children, their neighbors and strangers. Some believers neglect the Lord and others almost fully, while some neglect the Lord and others to a lesser degree. Believers must never allow their career or job to consume them and come before and between the Lord and their family. Sadly, many pastors and evangelists neglect their family.

Spouse, boyfriend/girlfriend, sex

But I want you to be free from concern. One who is unmarried is concerned about the things of the Lord, how he may please the Lord; but one who is married is concerned about the things of the world, how he may please his wife, and his interests are divided. The woman who is unmarried, and the virgin, is concerned about the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and spirit; but one who is married is concerned about the things of the world, how she may please her husband. This I say for your own benefit; not to put a restraint upon you, but to promote what is appropriate and to secure undistracted devotion to the Lord. (1 Corinthians 7. 32-35)

It is not a sin to marry (1 Corinthians 7.28), and it is better to marry than to burn in lust (1 Corinthians 7.9). If a couple is 100% sold out to Jesus Christ marriage can increase the time they serve Him. Yet the majority of marriages are not between two sold out believers. Most couples spend more time serving each other than they do the Lord. In bad marriages couples neglect their duties to each other and the Lord. One or both become backslidden shipwrecking their faith.

A believing couple that is not sold out to the Lord can be if they want to. The following steps will help you become a true bond slave couple of the Lord:

1. Pray together every day (1 Thessalonians 5.17).
2. Read the Bible together every day (Deut. 17.19).
3. Study the Bible together at least once a week (2 Timothy 2.15).
4. Memorize Scripture together – one verse a week (Psalm 119.11).
5. Meditate on Scripture together (Joshua 1.8; Job 23.12; Psalm 1.2).
6. Go to church together and get involved (Hebrews 10.24-25).

7. Live a holy life and share the Gospel as the Holy Spirit leads (1 Peter 3.15).
8. If you have children disciple them (Deut. 4.9-10; 6.6-9; 11.18; 32.46; Proverbs 1.8; 2.1; 3.1; 4.1; 5.1; 6.20).

For the vast majority of single believers their relationships with their boyfriends/girlfriends hinder their service to the Lord. The way to not be sidetracked while you are seeing someone is to follow the first seven steps above.

Sex is a problem for all singles. They are commanded to *“flee from youthful lusts and pursue righteousness, faith, love and peace, with those who call on the Lord from a pure heart.”* (2 Timothy 2.22). Instead of wasting time and money chasing loose women, brothers in the Lord are to spend their time serving the Lord with other Spirit led believers. They should give some of their money to the work of the Lord instead of strange women (Proverbs 29.3).

Sisters in the Lord who allow brothers or unsaved men to seduce them in hopes of getting married are fooling themselves. Most men abandon the women they seduce for another. It is always better for a brother or sister in the Lord to wait until marriage to engage in sex.



Rolls Royce James Young 1961

Accumulation of stuff

“But God said to him, ‘You fool! This very night your soul is required of you; and now who will own what you have prepared?’ So is the man who stores up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God.” (Luke 12.20-21)

Every believer owns things. Even the apostles who had very little owned clothes, a knapsack, a walking stick and a flask or jug of some kind to drink from as they took the Gospel to the nations. Some even had homes, but none of them accumulated lots of possessions.

Believers should remember that everything we own is a tool to help us serve the Lord more effectively. We might consider disposing of the things that we have solely for our pleasure. Any possession, whether it is a car, motorcycle, dirt bike, ATV, RV, boat or plane, that takes more of your time than you give to God is an idol (1 John 5.21).

Every believer should spend more time in the Scriptures, prayer, fellowship with the brethren and sharing the Gospel than on their possessions and worldly activities. If you are spending five minutes a day in prayer and maybe five minutes a day reading the Bible, your possessions and your love for the things of the world are more important to you than your Savior. You need to examine your faith, your life and your desires, and then make some changes.

Put Jesus Christ first in your life. Give Him the first hour of your free time each day. Pray before you do anything for yourself and pray throughout the day. Read, study, memorize or meditate on His Word when you start each day. Eat spiritual food before you eat physical food (Deuteronomy 8.3). Then consume His Word throughout the day. Read a chapter here and a chapter there. Try to memorize one verse a week and pick a book or topic to study and study it. Get disciplined.

Another aspect in accumulating stuff is envy. Some believers accumulate stuff because they are envious of their

neighbors, friends, relatives and strangers who have more stuff than they do. Believers are to not envy others (saved or unsaved) for any reason (Proverbs 23.17; 24.1, 19). We are to be content with the bare necessities as Agur was (Proverbs 30.8-9), and as Paul was (Philippians 4.11; 1 Timothy 6.8; Hebrews 13.5). We must also remember what our Lord said about possessions and necessities – that we should not accumulate wealth (Matthew 6.19-21) and should not be anxious for our daily needs (Matthew 6.25-32). Instead we are to lay up eternal treasures in Heaven (Matthew 6.20) and seek first His kingdom and His righteousness (Matthew 6.33).



Television, movies, music

Whether, then, you eat or drink or whatever you do, do all to the glory of God. (1 Corinthians 10.31)

There is probably no believer in the Western World who has not become distracted from serving the Lord to some degree by secular television, movies and secular music. Far too many believers spend more time watching television and movies than they do praying and studying the Bible. If believers in the West were to spend more time in prayer and in

the Word than they do just watching television and movies there would be a revival greater than that of the first Great Awakening of the 18th century.

Television and movies are two of the most effective forms of brainwashing ever invented. Viewers are conditioned to accept what is shown through thousands of viewings. The brainwashing is very subtle and it can take decades to fully brainwash some people. Some of the behaviors that the devil's brainwashing machines have conditioned people to accept as normal are – drunkenness, getting high on drugs, smoking, pre-marital and extra-marital sex, homosexuality, abortion, cheating others, lying, stealing, cursing, gambling and doing whatever it takes to get ahead. It has also been used to push the numerous isms that plague the world – atheism, humanism, evolutionism, communism, socialism, feminism, homosexualism, hedonism and existentialism.

There is very little worth watching on secular television. Some news programs, documentaries, wildlife shows and talk shows can be worth watching, but virtually all dramas, situation comedies and soap operas are a total waste of time. Quiz and game shows and reality shows are also a waste of time. They are just trivial pursuits.

Believer television is primarily entertainment with very little serious Bible teaching and preaching. Be very careful what you watch. There are hundreds of false teachers on television who are leading believers astray.

If you need to relax read the Bible or a good book about the Bible. Talk with your spouse and children. You can also go to church. Attendance on Sunday and Wednesday night is about ten percent of the Sunday morning service for most churches in America.

Think about what believers did before radio, movies and television were invented. They spent time in fellowship with their families and each other. The devil and his minions have hindered believers from serving the Lord with the distraction of radio, television and movies.

Virtually all secular music and far too much “Christian” music are not pleasing to the Lord. Rock and Roll, Hip Hop,

Rap, Blues, Jazz and Country Western music are for the most part not edifying and they are definitely not honoring to the Lord. Most “Christian” music is not edifying or honoring to the Lord either.

Be very discriminating in what music you listen to. It is a subtle form of brainwashing just as television and movies are.



Lombardy Trophy awarded to the winner of the Super Bowl

Sports

For bodily discipline is only of little profit, but godliness is profitable for all things, since it holds promise for the present life and also for the life to come. (1 Timothy 4.8)

Professional and amateur sports are a phenomenon of the 20th century. Even though they began in the 19th century they did not appeal to the masses until the 20th century.

There is nothing wrong in participating in sports. Yet some believers spend far more time participating in all kinds of sports and it becomes an obsession. During the fitness craze of the 1970s and 80s some believers spent more time in the gym than they did in church, prayer and the Word. Some still do.

There is also nothing wrong in watching a sporting event in person or on television, but the vast majority of brothers in the Lord spend far too much time watching sporting events. If every brother who watches sports were to spend more time in prayer and the study of the Bible than watching sports there would be a revival in the West greater than the second Great Awakening of the 18th century.

Sports is the most popular subject of discussion among men in church. It is hard to believe but many churches have Super Bowl parties at church. Most men talk about sports after service or at potlucks. They rarely talk about the Bible. Why? They know everything about their favorite sport and teams, but almost nothing about the Bible. Pastors need to set the example by never talking about sports at church or church gatherings, and they should discourage men from talking about sports. Every pastor should challenge the men in the church to give up one Super Bowl. They should have an all men's prayer meeting and Bible study during the Super Bowl where the importance of spending time each day in prayer and the Bible is taught. Maybe some pastors will be able to wean their men off the worship of the idol called the Super Bowl. They can also do the same thing for the World Series, and the basketball and hockey playoffs. Imagine how happy the wives would be. It would bring husbands and wives closer together.

Unsaved friends

Do not be deceived: "Bad company corrupts good morals." (1 Corinthians 15.33)

Peer pressure is a big distraction among young believers. They have extreme pressure put on them in the public schools to fit in. Most give in and hang out with the unsaved. They do the things the unsaved do and far too many get dragged into the lifestyle of the wicked. By the time they graduate from high school they no longer go to church and the few who do go to make their parents happy. Once they head off to college they usually fall away entirely and live like the wicked. That is one reason why most believers marry the unsaved.

It is the duty of the pastors and the parents to teach their youth that they are not to hang with the wicked. They are not to have unsaved friends and never date an unsaved person. This does not mean they can never speak with someone who is not saved. They should do that every day and share the Gospel through word and deed. It means they are not to do worldly things with their unsaved friends.

They can have unsaved friends go to church and church events with them, but they should avoid going to places and doing things with the unsaved that is not honoring to the Lord. A possible exception might be playing pick up or organized ball. Yet if the unsaved men they play with use foul language and tell dirty jokes believers must tell them they will not tolerate it. The unsaved will comply with the wishes of a believer most of the time. If they do not they should walk away. When believers play ball with the lost they should be the leader and always take the time to say something about their faith in Jesus Christ.

Celebrity worship

Little children, keep yourselves from idols. Amen. (1 John 5.21)

Virtually all the unsaved and most believers worship celebrities. Believers do not consider their admiration of celebrities to be a form of worship but it is. Any time a believer spends more time following the exploits of a celebrity

than they do fellowshiping with their Savior that is celebrity worship. If you spend more time following your favorite celebrity than you do in prayer and Bible reading, study, memorization and meditation you have a problem with idol worship. That celebrity is an idol that you worship. Study the warning that John gave all of us (1 John 5.21).

Anything that a one devotes more time to than prayer, the Word, fellowship with the brethren and sharing the Gospel with the lost is an idol. The only exceptions are sleep, work and family. Examine yourself to see if you have any idols. Take the “Faith Check” in Appendix B.



Food

Whose end is destruction, whose god is their appetite, and whose glory is in their shame, who set their minds on earthly things. (Philippians 3.19)

The devil does not have to work very hard to sidetrack believers with food, but he pushes junk food with a vengeance. He knows it kills more people every year than anything else. More than one million people die every year in America alone from heart disease, diabetes, cancer and other ailments that are caused by poor diet.

Most believers overeat without much help from the forces of darkness. They do not understand that their body is a “*a temple of God and that the Spirit of God dwells in you? If any man destroys the temple of God, God will destroy him, for the temple of God is holy, and that is what you are.*” (1Corinthians 3.16-17). That means if a believer destroys his body (*the temple of God*) through eating a poor diet, consuming excessive amounts of alcohol, drugs or tobacco, or a lack of proper sleep and exercise, God will destroy him.

Of these leading causes of premature death in America all are due primarily to poor diet and use of toxic substances such as alcohol, illegal drugs and tobacco. Some researchers believe diet is the main cause of Alzheimer’s. It should also be noted that the third leading cause of death in America is medical errors. In 2000 a researcher discovered that 225,000 Americans died from medical errors including overdose from prescription drugs. If you eat an unhealthy diet you will end up in the hospital and you may die due to medical incompetence.

Few believers die of old age. Most die prematurely due to myriad ailments caused from eating a poor diet. They consume far too much sugar, caffeine, meat, processed foods and milk products. These are the killer foods that cause heart disease, stroke, diabetes and Alzheimer’s disease. (There is some evidence that drinking sodas in aluminum cans is a contributing factor in Alzheimer’s disease. The aluminum leeches into the sodas and accumulates in the brain causing the dreaded disease.) The leading causes of death in America in 2007 were:

Heart disease	616,067
Cancer	562,875
Stroke (cerebrovascular diseases)	135,952
Chronic lower respiratory diseases	127,924
Alzheimer’s disease	74,632
Diabetes	71,382
Nephritis and nephrosis	46,448
Annual deaths due to poor diet	1,383,225

Pastors should set an example by eating a healthy diet and exhorting their flock to do the same. Yet many pastors set the example of gluttony and their flock follows them. Gluttony is a sin (Proverbs 23.20-21; 28.7), and no matter how many excuses a pastor or layman may make – there is NO excuse to not loose weight. It is very easy for anyone to lose weight. All one has to do is reduce their intake of calories and eat healthy foods. No matter how slow a person’s metabolism may be anyone can lose weight.

The key to losing weight and having a healthy “*temple of God*” is knowledge. Always get proper sleep and exercise. Drink pure water and replace unhealthy foods with healthy ones. Keep replacing junk foods with good foods until all you eat is healthy foods. That is the way to keep your “*temple of God*” in tip-top condition. Whenever possible buy organic foods. Below is a chart of “healthy” and “unhealthy” foods. Try to eat as many of the “healthy” foods as you can and as few of the “unhealthy” foods as possible.

Healthy Foods	Unhealthy Foods
Fruits	Alcohol
Vegetables	Sugar (raw and in food)
Raw cereals (no added sugar)	Sodas
Nuts	Caffeinated drinks
Seeds	Milk
Eggs	Ice cream
Legumes (beans)	Cheese
Grains (rice, corn, millet, rye)	Cottage cheese
Stem tubers (potatoes)	Yogurt
Root tubers (sweet potatoes/ yams)	Meat
Peppers	Fish
Herbs	Fowl
Allium (onions, scallions, garlic, shallots, leeks, chives)	Processed foods (Most foods in boxes, cans and packages.)

If you eat any of the unhealthy foods buy organic only. To learn more about the dangers of the Standard American Diet that has killed millions of Americans watch the movies *Fast Food Nation*, *Food, Inc.* and *Super Size Me*; watch the videos “*Diet for a New America*” and “*Food: The Ultimate Secret*” (www.infowars.com/food-the-ultimate-secret-exposed), read the book by Eric Schlosser, *Fast Food Nation* and *Diet for a New America* by John Robbins; and read the articles at www.naturalnews.com.

There are other dangers not only in the food we eat, but the water we drink. To learn about the dangers of fluoridated water check these links: www.radioliberty.com/nldec04.html & www.naturalnews.com. When you go to the Natural News website type in *fluoride* in its search window to see a list of articles dealing with it.

There is also a danger in vaccines. To learn about this threat visit: www.naturalnews.com. (Type *vaccines* in the search window.)

One last danger to consider is the cell phone. For articles concerning this type *cell phone* into the search window at www.naturalnews.com.

Take care of the temple of the Holy Spirit the best you can.

Alcohol, drugs, thrill seeking

And do not get drunk with wine, for that is dissipation, but be filled with the Spirit. (Ephesians 5.18)

Abuse of alcohol and drugs (legal and illegal) is one of the leading causes of crime, loss of work productivity and divorce. They will continue to be abused until the Second Advent of Jesus Christ. During the Tribulation drug addiction will be universal. Virtually everyone will be an addict of legal or illegal drugs (Revelation 9.21; 18.23).

No Christian should ever become intoxicated with alcohol or drugs. If you do not get “high” by studying the Bible there might be something wrong with you. Studying the Bible is the

most exciting thing any believer can do. There is nothing a believer can do in this life that is more exciting.

Alcoholics get “high” by drinking a few beers at the beginning, but eventually downing a six-pack is not enough. They have to move on to more powerful drinks to get “high.” Some end up drinking themselves drunk every night.

Drug addicts start with a weak drug but the “high” they get is not that big so they take more of the drug or they move on to more potent drugs. Many drug addicts get to a point that no matter how powerful a dose they take they cannot get “higher.” The only way they can get “higher” is to over-dose themselves into Hell.

There are also thrill-seekers who seek out all sorts exciting activities, but after they have done them a few dozen times the thrill is not the same. They seek something bigger, better, faster and scarier. Some of these thrill-seekers end up dying from pushing too hard.

Thrill-seekers usually run out of things to do to give them the “rush” they seek. Believers can get “high” and get a greater “rush” than anything natural man can experience by studying the Bible. Studying the infallible, holy Word of God is more thrilling than anything you can imagine. The Bible is God revealing Himself to you. The more we study His Word the more learn about Him and get to know Him.

How could any physical experience be more thrilling and exciting than communing with the Creator of the Universe? Do you really believe that fellowship with the Creator of the Universe is boring? If you do not get so excited when you study the Bible that you want to rush out and share what you learned with others you may be spiritually dead. If the infinite wisdom, understanding and knowledge of God are boring to you it is possible you may not be saved.

If studying the Bible has been boring to you try studying these books – Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Daniel, James, 1 John, 1 Peter, 2 Peter, Jude and Revelation. Start with one book and read a chapter or two each day. Take notes and write down what you learn. Memorize verses that speak to you and

meditate on them. Write notes about things you do not understand and find someone who can teach you.

If that does not get you excited study the following passages – Genesis 2.6; 3.24; 6.1-4; 15.17; 20.12; 24.2-5; 28.12-17; 29.22; 32.24-32; 38.1-30; Exodus 4.24-26; 32.20; Isaiah 8.1-3; 20.1-6; Micah 1.8. Other passages to study are:

The Eternal Kingdom – Revelation 21.1-22.5

Extreme phenomenon – Joshua 10.12-13; 2 Kings 20.9-11; Joshua 10.11; Revelation 16.21; Revelation 16.18-20

Spaceships – 2 Kings 2.11; 6.17; Ps. 68.17; Isaiah 66.15; Habakkuk. 3.8

Flying horses – Revelation 19.11, 14

Guardian angels – Matthew 18.10; Acts 12.15

Forces of darkness – Daniel 10.20; John 12.31; 14.30; 16.11; 2 Corinthians 4.4; Ephesians 2.2; 6.12

Angelic weapons – Genesis 19.11; Ezek. 9.1, 2, 7; Acts 12.7, 10

Biological weapons – Job 2.7; Exodus 12.23, 29-30; Psalm 78.49-51; 2 Samuel 24.15-17; 1 Chronicles 21.14-16; Amos 4.10.

If the above passages do not give you a hunger and thirst to study the Bible you may want to examine your faith (2 Corinthians 13.5).

Schemes to blind the lost

The devil's gang has thousands of schemes which they use to blind "*the minds of the unbelieving so that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.*" (2 Corinthians 4.4). Believers should be aware of these schemes so we can defeat them through prayer and the Word of God. The top ten blinders are:

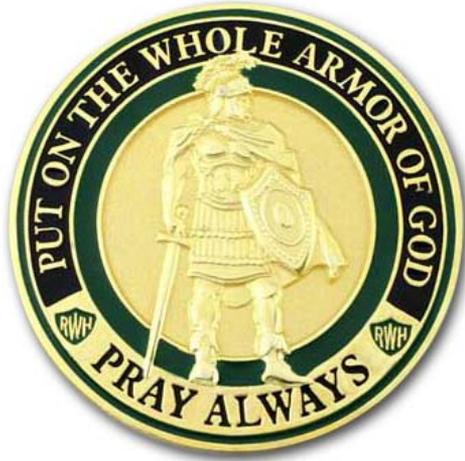
1. Love of money
2. Career/Job
3. Spouse, boyfriend/girlfriend, sex
4. Accumulation of stuff
5. Television, movies, music
6. False religions, cults, isms
7. Sports
8. Celebrity worship
9. Food
10. Alcohol and drugs

The schemes of the devil to distract believers and blind the lost are almost identical. He uses the same old tricks that have worked for thousands of years. When new technology comes along such as movies, radio, TV and the Internet he races in and uses it to deceive mankind.

The devil uses false religions, cults and the isms to deceive the lost and the saved. It is the duty of pastors to teach their flock what the false religions and cults are and train them how to resist being seduced by them. Pastors should also train them how to lead cultists to the Lord. It is important for them to show their flock from the Scriptures that the leading isms plaguing the world are of the devil. They are:

Atheism	Liberalism
Evolutionism	Socialism
Humanism	Communism
Hedonism	Existentialism

These isms are taught in all public schools in the West and the students are thoroughly brainwashed into accepting them. This is a major reason why believing parents should not send their children to the devil's indoctrination centers (day-care centers, public schools and public universities). Every church should do what it can to train parents to home school their children or to have a school.



STEP NINE

ARMOR OF GOD

Every believer is in a spiritual war that will not stop until the day you die or the Rapture. We are commanded to fight the good fight of faith:

Fight the good fight of faith; take hold of the eternal life to which you were called, and you made the good confession in the presence of many witnesses. I charge you in the presence of God, who gives life to all things, and of Christ Jesus, who testified the good confession before Pontius Pilate, that you keep the commandment without stain or reproach until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ. (1 Timothy 6.12-14)

All believers need to learn what the “armor of God” is and how to use it. We are in a spiritual war and every believer is a warrior. Most have been wounded and are sitting on the sidelines watching the war.

Very few pastors train the members of the congregation in the arts of spiritual warfare. This is why most churches are not alive and why many have been dead for decades. It is the solemn duty of the pastors to train their spiritual soldiers to fight just as the drill instructors in all military basic training camps train their recruits to fight. If your church does not have a basic training program study this step carefully, then put on your armor every day and go into battle with boldness.

Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of His might. Put on the full armor of God, so that you will be able to stand firm against the schemes of the devil. For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the powers, against the world forces of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of wickedness in the heavenly places. Therefore, take up the full armor of God, so that you will be able to resist in the evil day, and having done everything, to stand firm. Stand firm therefore, HAVING GIRDED YOUR LOINS WITH TRUTH, and HAVING PUT ON THE BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS, and having shod YOUR FEET WITH THE PREPARATION OF THE GOSPEL OF PEACE; in addition to all, taking up the shield of faith with which you will be able to extinguish all the flaming arrows of the evil one. And take THE HELMET OF SALVATION, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God. With all prayer and petition pray at all times in the Spirit, and with this in view, be on the alert with all perseverance and petition for all the saints. (Ephesians 6.10-18)

As we saw in Step Eight the devil has many schemes to keep believers from serving God fully. That is why it is vitally important to know what our armor is and how to use it. Study the above passage in Ephesians and meditate on it for many hours. Memorize the passage and burn it into your mind and heart. Also study the exposition of the passage given on the following page.

Your armor

1. Gird your loins about with truth (v. 14).
2. Put on the breastplate of righteousness (v. 14).
3. Shod your feet with the Gospel (v. 15).
4. Take up the shield of faith (v. 16).
5. Put on the helmet of salvation (v. 17).
6. Take up the sword of the Spirit (v. 17).

Gird your loins about with truth

A believer clothes himself with the truth by studying Scripture. The Bible from Genesis 1.1 to Revelation 22.21 is truth. Every believer needs to study the entire Bible book-by-book, chapter-by-chapter and verse-by-verse throughout his life. Daily and methodical reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture is a must. We need the whole truth and not just part of the truth to be victorious in our spiritual battles. That is why it is extremely important to set up a Spiritual Fitness Program. You should already have set one up, but if you have not go to Appendix C and then take the time to set up one. Do not put it off for even one day.

Believers clothe themselves with the truth, but also with righteous deeds. A believer's robe of righteousness is symbolic of our righteous deeds that God has prepared for us to do (Ephesians 2.10; 2 Timothy 3.17). Each morning when a believer wakes up he puts on his robe of righteousness by praying (1 Thessalonians 5.17) that the Lord direct his steps that day and give him the strength to do the good deeds that God has prepared for him to do. He also needs to spend time in the Word. Daily Bible reading, study, memorization and meditation is necessary to prepare for spiritual battle. One must start the day with time in Scripture and then renew one's mind with It throughout the day. Taking periodic Bible breaks is a good habit to develop.

Girding your loins with the truth is symbolic of preparing your mind for battle. We do that by daily reading, studying,

memorizing and meditating on Scripture. One must be prepared to encounter problems throughout the day and respond to them in a holy, loving, joyful and considerate manner. These problems may be encounters with people seeking to harm or deceive us, accidents, illness or circumstances that prevent us from doing what we planned to do. When we fight through our daily problems with prayer and meditation on Scripture we will win the battles through the power of Jesus Christ who strengthens us (Philippians 4.13).

Put on the breastplate of righteousness

To put on the breastplate of righteousness means to live a holy life. All believer's are commanded to live holy lives (Leviticus 11.44; 19.2; 20.7; Psalm 99.3, 9; 1 Peter 1.14-16) instead of continuing to live sinful lives as we did before we were saved and cleansed (Romans 6.1-2, 6-7, 12-13; Ephesians 4.17; 1 Peter 4.2-3). We are to daily not be conformed to the world but transform and cleanse our minds (Romans 12.1-2). We do this by reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture. It is the Word of God that cleanses our minds and lives (John 15.3; 17.17; Ephesians 5.26). This daily cleansing will enable us to lay aside our old nature, be renewed in our minds and put on our new nature (Ephesians 4.22-24). It will also help us abstain from fleshly lust (1 Peter 2.11) and not love the things of the world (1 John 2.15-17). As we daily read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture the Holy Spirit washes, regenerates and renews us (Titus 3.5).

Shod your feet with the Gospel

Shodding your feet (putting on footwear) means to be prepared at all times to share the Gospel. Every believer is commanded to know what the Gospel is and how to share it with everyone who asks him about his faith (1 Peter 3.15). To be able to share the Gospel in a clear manner one must

memorize the basic verses. It is also necessary to learn how to quote them in a logical order and comment on them. Memorize the basic verses in Step 2 and practice sharing the Gospel with a brother. This is another reason you need a discipleship partner (Step 5).

Take up the shield of faith

Taking up the shield of faith means to use your faith. We do that by trusting the Lord to meet our needs as He has promised (Matthew 6.25-34; Philippians 4.6). Instead of worrying about our daily needs we are to trust in the Lord. That does not mean we can watch television all day and not seek work. Everyone must work for a living (2 Thessalonians 3.10). We do what we can to meet our needs and trust the Lord for the rest.

Along with using our faith we should seek to increase it. The more we exercise our faith the more it grows. It also grows by study of Scripture for “*faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ.*” (Romans 10.17). The more we study Scripture the more our faith grows. This is just one more reason why every believer needs to read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture daily.

Put on the helmet of salvation

Putting on the helmet of salvation is having total assurance of your salvation. The helmet protects the most vital part of a body and when a soldier does not wear a helmet he becomes highly vulnerable to injury and death. The same is true in spiritual warfare. When a believer does not have complete assurance that he is saved he can easily be taken out by the enemy. Doubts can sneak into one’s mind concerning his conversion and if those doubts are not dealt with they can cause him to stop serving God or even believing in Him.

Assurance of salvation is necessary to stay in the spiritual battle. Failure to have assurance also endangers the brethren.

A believer in a position of leadership who does not have assurance can cause others to doubt their salvation resulting in the destruction of spiritual moral. Spiritual soldiers who are demoralized are ineffective and become casualties.

One can have assurance of salvation by knowing the Gospel and by making a public profession that you have trusted in Jesus Christ alone to save you by His sacrifice on the cross understanding that *“that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, and that He was buried, and that He was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures”* (1 Corinthians 15.3-4). Once you make that confession fully trusting Jesus to save you apart from works, baptism, keeping the Sabbath or any other law or ordinance you can have total assurance of your salvation.

Take up the sword of the Spirit

The sword is an offensive and defensive weapon. Every believer should be an expert swordsman capable of defending his faith. Our spiritual sword is Scripture (Hebrews 4.12). Defending our faith is the ability to quote or cite Scriptures to refute those who make false charges or claims against our faith, the Bible and God. One uses Scripture in an offensive manner by using Scripture to destroy concepts, ideologies and philosophies that are opposed to Scripture (2 Corinthians 10.5). We can also defend the faith and destroy unbiblical ideologies by writing articles and books, and making audio and video presentations.

Prayer

Along with our armor we must also use prayer in our daily spiritual battles. We should wake up praying, pray throughout the day and pray as we fall asleep (1 Thessalonians 5.17). We are to pray for ourselves and our brethren (Ephesians 6.18). We cannot pray for every believer we know, but we should try to pray for as many as we can.

Appearance

Every believer is an ambassador of Jesus Christ (2 Corinthians 5.20) and should dress as an ambassador. This does not mean we must walk around in public in our Sunday best every day of the week. For some that is appropriate for them, but not for most. We should dress well and not try to attract undue attention to ourselves. Men should wear clean slacks that are not too worn out with decent shoes and a clean shirt. Women should wear a clean dress or skirt that does not cling to her body and which hangs down to her knees or below. Mini-skirts are not modest dress. If a woman wears a skirt with a blouse the blouse should not cling to her body revealing all of her curves. It should also not be a low-cut blouse. Women should only wear slacks if a dress or skirt would be not appropriate for the chore they are doing. Women should also not doll themselves up with loads of make-up, jewelry, fancy hair-dos or anything else. They must always dress modestly without attempting to draw attention to themselves:

Your adornment must not be merely external braiding the hair, and wearing gold jewelry, or putting on dresses; but let it be the hidden person of the heart, with the imperishable quality of a gentle and quiet spirit, which is precious in the sight of God. (1 Peter 3.3-4)

Single women, you do not have to look like a movie star or a model to attract the attention of a man. You attract the attention of a holy man by living a holy life, dressing modestly and serving the Lord. The kind of man women attract by wearing provocative clothing and accessories is not the type of man a true daughter of Sarah should want (1 Peter 3.6).

A true man of YAHWEH may not be exciting, funny, rich, handsome, strong or anything else that most unsaved women are looking for. Which is more important to you – a man of the world who makes you happy for a few years or a man of YAHWEH who is sold out to Him and to you?

STEP TEN

STUDY QUESTIONS

Remember to study the teaching outline on page 207. Study it carefully reading every passage before answering these questions.

Introduction

1. In the First Century what names were people called who trusted in Jesus Christ? (John 21.23; Acts 6.3 – Acts 5.14; 1 Timothy 4.12 – Acts 11.26; 26.28; 1 Peter 4.16 – Matthew 27.52; Acts 26.10; Romans 1.7; 8.27; 1 Thessalonians 3.13 – Acts 6.1-2, 7; 9.1, 10, 19, 25-26, 36, 38; 11.26, 29; 13.52; 14.20, 22; 15.10; 16.1; 18.23, 27; 19.1, 9, 30; 20.1, 7, 30; 21.4, 16)

- A.
- B.
- C.
- D.
- E.

2. In the First Century what was the name of the believer Faith? (Acts 9.2; 19.9, 23; 22.4; 24.14, 22)

3. Is every true believer in Jesus Christ a disciple?

4. What activities should a disciple of Jesus do on a regular basis? (Romans 10.17; Revelation 1.3; 2 Timothy 2.15; Psalm 119.11; Psalm 1.2; Ephesians 6.18; Hebrews 10.24-25; 1 Peter 3.15; 2 Timothy 2.2)

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

5. Should a true believer be an active member of a church? (Romans 12.1-16; 1 Corinthians 12.4-31)

6. Should every believer know how to study the Bible? (Acts 17.11; 2 Timothy 2.15)

7. Should every believer know how to teach the Bible? (Deuteronomy 6.6-7; Proverbs 6.20)

8. Was the Great Commission given to all believers? (Matthew 28.19-20)

9. Should every believer be able to share the gospel in a clear and concise manner? (1 Peter 3.15)

10. Should every believer eventually know how to make a disciple? (Matthew 28.19-20)

Sin and Judgment

1. Does everyone have a need to be saved? (Romans 3.23)

2. Is there a spark of divinity in everyone? (Psalm 14.1-3; 51.5; 53.1-4; 143.2; Ecclesiastes 3.18; Isaiah 64.6; Romans 3.10-12)

3. At what age does everyone go astray – follow the path of sin? (Psalm 58.3)

4. What is the end result of living a life of sin? (Proverbs 12.15; 14.12; 16.25; Romans 6.23)

5. Will those who die in their sins be judged for every sin they committed? (Psalm 62.12; Proverbs 24.12; Jeremiah 17.10; 32.19; Matthew 12.36; 16.27; Luke 8.17; Romans 2.6, 16; 1 Peter 1.17; Revelation 2.23; 20.12)

6. Will there be varying degrees of punishment in Hell and the Lake of Fire? (Matthew 11.22; Mark 6.11; Luke 12.46-48; 20.47)

7. Where do those who die in their sins go? (Luke 16.19-31; Revelation 20.11-15)

A.

B.

8. How long will the wicked remain in the Lake of Fire? (Matthew 25.41, 48; Revelation 14.11; 20.10)

9. Are the descriptions of Hell and the Lake of Fire literal or symbolic? (Psalm 11.6; 140.10; Proverbs 25.22; Luke 16.19-31; Romans 12.20; Revelation 14.9-11; 20.10; 21.8)

10. Where is Hell located? (Psalm 63.9; Isaiah 44.23; Ezekiel 26.20; Matthew 12.40)

11. Where is the Lake of Fire located? (Matthew 8.12; 22.13; 25.30; 2 Peter 2.17; Jude 13)

Salvation

1. What must you do to be saved? (Acts 16.30-31; Romans 10.9-11)

A. What does believing in Jesus Christ mean? (John 3.16)

B. What does faithing in Jesus mean? (Romans 4.5)

C. What does trusting in Jesus mean? (Matthew 12.21; 2 Corinthians 1.9; 1 Timothy 4.10)

D. What does receiving Jesus mean? (John 1.12)

2. What is the gospel of Jesus Christ? (I Corinthians 15.3-5)

A.

B.

C.

D.

3. A person is saved by _____ through _____ in Jesus Christ alone (Ephesians 2.8).

4. Is there anything we need to do to be saved other than trust in Jesus? (Romans 4.1-8; Ephesians 2.9)

5. Can a person be saved apart from Jesus? (John 14.6; 15.23)

A. Can members of religions that do not believe that Jesus Christ is God be saved and go to Heaven?

B. Can people be saved and go to Heaven if they are faithful Jews, Buddhists, Hindus or Muslims?

6. What happens to people who die without hearing the gospel of Jesus Christ? (Romans 1.18-20)

7. What happens to those who die before they are able to understand the gospel such as unborn babies, infants, toddlers and the retarded? (2 Samuel 12.23)

8. Do those who die without believing in Jesus Christ get a second chance to be saved? (Hebrews 9.27)

9. Should there be noticeable changes in your life after you trust Jesus to save you? (2 Corinthians 5.17)

10. What are some changes you have seen in your life since being saved?

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

11. If there is no visible change in a person's life could it mean their confession of faith in Jesus Christ was not sincere?

12. Does saying a salvation prayer save you?

13. Can a person think he is saved, and not be born from above? (Matthew 7.21-23; Luke 13.24; 1 Corinthians 15.2)

14. What things can an unsaved person do in the name of Jesus Christ? (Matthew 7.21-23)

A.

B.

C.

15. Can a person lose, forfeit, give up or walk away from his salvation? (John 3.16; 5.24; 6.37-40; 10.28-29; 1 John 5.10-13).

16. If a person stops abiding in Christ could he lose his salvation? (Proverbs 3.11-12; Hebrews 12.5-6; John 15.1-6; 1 Corinthians 5.5)

17. Can a person have his salvation stolen from him by another person or by the forces of darkness? (Romans 8.37-39)

18. Is eternal life eternal or temporary? (Matthew 25.46; John 3.16; 5.24; 6.40; 10.28-29; Romans 6.23; 1 John 5.11-13)

Santification

1. Why should we live sanctified (holy) lives? (Leviticus 11.44; 19.2; 20.7; 2 Corinthians. 7.1; 1 Peter 1.15-16; 4.1-2; Hebrews 11.6)

A.

B.

1.

2.

2. How are we sanctified? (Psalm 119.9-11; John 15.3; 17.17; Ephesians 5.26 – Proverbs 15.29; Revelation 5.8; 8.3 – Deuteronomy 6.13; Psalm 95.6; Matthew 4.10; Acts 2.47 – Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25; 1 Peter 4.7)

- A.
- B.
- C.
- D.

3. How often should we read the Bible? (Deuteronomy 17.19)

4. How often should we study Scripture? (Acts 2.42, 46; 17.11)

5. Should all believers memorize Scripture throughout their life?

6. Why should we memorize Scripture? (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.9-11; Proverbs 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Romans 10.8; Colossians 3.16)

7. How often should we meditate on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Psalm 1.2; 63.6; 119.97, 148)

8. Why should we meditate on Scripture? (Joshua 1.8; Psalm 1.2; Psalm 119.99; 1 Timothy 4.15; 1 John 2.27)

A.

B.

C.

D.

9. How often should we pray? (1 Chronicles 16.11; Luke 18.1; Ephesians 6.18; 1 Thessalonians 5.17)

10. When are the best times to pray? (Mark 1.35; 6.46)

A.

B.

11. Who should we pray to? (John 14.13-14; 15.16; 16.23)

A.

B.

12. Why should we pray? (Matthew 26.41; Luke 11.9; John 16.24)

A.

B.

13. Who should we pray with? (Luke 5.16; Matthew 18.19; Luke 1.10; Acts 1.14; 4.24; 12.12; Acts 21.5; 1 Corinthians 7.5)

A.

B.

C.

14. What should our attitude be when we pray? (2 Chronicles 7.14; Jeremiah 29.13; Mark 11.24; James 1.6)

15. What should we not do when we pray? (Matthew 6.5-7)

16. What should we pray for? (1 Kings 3.9; Matthew 6.8-13; Acts 12.5; Ephesians 6.18; 1 Timothy 2.1-2; James 1.5; 5.13-15)

A.

B.

C.

D.

- E.
- F.
- G.
- H.
- I.
- J.
- K.

17. What must we do to have our prayers answered? (Proverbs 29.9; John 15.7; James 1.6; 1 John 3.22; 5.14-15)

- A.
- B.
- C.
- D.
- E.

18. How often should we pray for a specific thing? (Luke 18.1-8)

19. Will our prayers always be answered?

20. Should we be careful what we pray for? (Numbers 11.15; 1 Kings 19.4; Jonah 4.3)

21. Does the Lord answer some of our prayers to teach us a lesson?

22. What can keep our prayers from being answered? (Psalm 66.18; Proverbs 21.13; 28.9; Isaiah 59.2; Micah 3.4; Zechariah 7.13; James 1.6-7; James 4.3)

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

23. Are there times we should agonize when we pray? (Deuteronomy 9.18, 25; 1 Samuel 15.11; Daniel 10.2-3, 11-12; Luke 6.12; 22.44; James 5.17)

24. What posture should we take when we pray? (Luke 22.41; John 17.1)

25. Should every Christian family have regular Bible study and times of worship? (Deuteronomy 6.7, 13)

26. What are the four basic acts involved in worship? (Deuteronomy 8.10; Psalm 9.11; 33.2; 67.3; 100.4; 107.22; Luke 2.13-14; 24.53; Acts 2.47; Hebrews 13.15 – Acts 1.14; 3.1 – John 7.14; 1 Timothy 4.13; 1 Peter 2.9 – Matthew 2.11; 1 Corinthians 16.1-2; 2 Corinthians 9.7)

A.

B.

C.

D.

27. Should all believers set aside one day each week to delight themselves in the Lord and honor Him? (Isaiah 58.13-14)

28. Should a disciple avoid fellowship or hanging out with a brother in the Lord who is backslidden? (Matthew 18.17; Romans 16.17; 1 Corinthians 5.11; 2 Thessalonians 3.6, 10, 14)

29. List some reasons why we should avoid being with a backslidden brother in the Lord (1 Corinthians 5.11; 15.33; 2 Thessalonians 3.6, 14). Come up with some of your own reasons.

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

30. Should we actively kill our carnal desires and why? (Romans 6.1-6, 11-12, 18, 21-22; Galatians 2.20; 5.24)

31. Should we have a healthy hatred of evil and avoid the way of the world? (Job 28.28; Psalm 34.13-14; Proverbs 4.27; 8.13; 14.14, 16; Galatians 6.14; 2 Timothy 2.19-22; 1 Peter 3.10-11; 4.1-4; 1 John 2.15-17)

32. Explain why we should refrain from living like the unsaved? (1 Peter 2.12)

33. Should we watch television shows, movies and videos that glorify the sin nature or listen to worldly music that is dishonoring to the Lord?

34. Why should we not watch worldly television shows, movies, videos and not listen to worldly music that are dishonoring to YAHWEH? (Romans 1.2)

35. Should we fellowship and hang out with the unsaved? (Exodus 23.2; 34.12; Psalm 1.1; Proverbs 1.10-19; 4.14; 22.24; 23.6; 24.1; 2 Corinthians 6.14-18; Ephesians 5.11)

36. Why should we not fellowship with the unsaved? (1 Corinthians 15.33)

37. Should we actively look for the return of the Lord and if so why? (1 Corinthians 1.7; 1 Thessalonians 4.16-18; James 5.7-8; 1 John 2.28; 3.2-3)

38. How do we look for the Lord's return?

39. Is a true believer backslidden if he does not fellowship with the brethren? (Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25)

40. Is a believer backslidden if he loves the world? (1 Timothy 6.10; 2 Timothy 4.10; 1 John 2.15-17)

41. What will the Lord do to a believer who is backslidden? (Psalm 39.11; 119.75; Proverbs 3.11-12; Hebrews 12.5-6; Revelation 3.19)

42. If a believer remains backslidden long enough could the Lord terminate his life? (John 15.1-6; 1 Corinthians 5.5)

Service

1. What are our spiritual weapons? (Ephesians 6.10-18)

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

2. Should we love those whom we serve? (John 13.35; 15.12; Romans 12.9; Galatians 3.12; 4.9; Hebrews 13.1-2; 1 Peter 1.22; 1 John 3.23)

3. Is humility an important attribute of a servant? (Proverbs 3.34; Isaiah 66.2; Micah 6.8; Luke 22.26; Romans 12.3, 16; Philippians 2.1-9; James 1.9-11; 4.6, 10; 1 Peter 5.5-6)

4. Should every believer be a servant to the brethren? (Mark 10.42-45)

5. Should we eagerly share with the brethren? (1 Timothy 6.18; James 2.15-18; 1 John 3.17-18)

6. List a few things we can share with each other.

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

7. Should we bear the burdens of our fellow believers?
(Galatians 6.2)

8. List a few ways we bear each others burdens.

A.

B.

C.

D.

9. Does every believer have at least one spiritual gift?
(Romans 12.4-8; 1 Corinthians 12.4-11; 1 Peter 4.10)

10. How do we determine what our spiritual gifts are?

11. Do you know what your spiritual gifts are? If so list them.

A.

B.

C.

12. Are you using your spiritual gifts?

Maturity

1. How do we grow in grace and in knowledge of the Lord? (1 Peter 2.2; 2 Peter 3.18)

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

2. What does a disciple do on a regular basis? (see page 220)

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

3. What is a bonds slave and should all Christians live as a bonds slave of Christ? (see page 221)

4. List men who were bonds slaves (see page 221).

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

5. Will all Christians who live holy lives suffer persecution?
(2 Timothy 3.12)

6. What does suffering result in if a disciple trusts in God?
(Romans 5.3-4)

A.

B.

C.

7. By our experience in suffering for the Lord we can help
_____. (Hebrews 4.15)

8. Should all believers be willing to die for the Lord and for
other believers? (John 15.13; 1 John 3.16)

9. Why should we increase our faith? (Hebrews 11.6; James
1.12; Revelation 3.11)

A.

B.

10. How do we increase our faith? (Romans 10.17; Acts 2.42;
Acts 2.42; 5.42; Hebrews 10.24-25)

A.

B.

C.

PART III

GROW UNTO A MATURE MAN

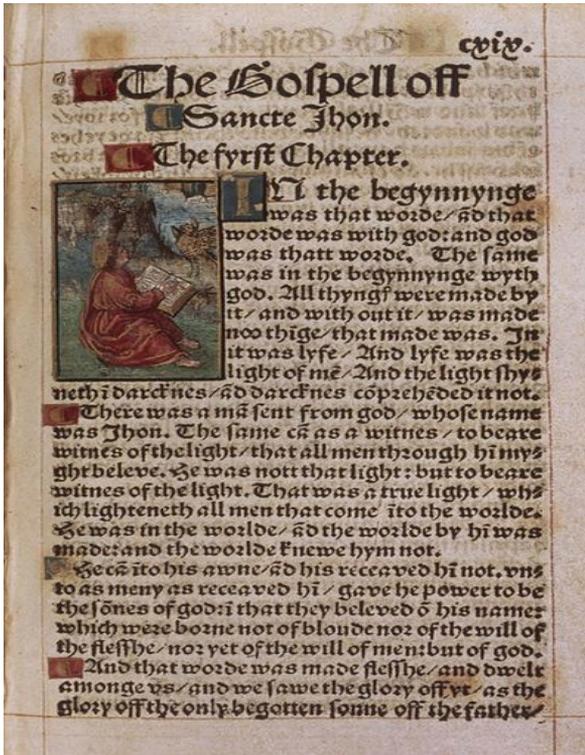
*And He gave some as apostles, and some as prophets, and some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers, for the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Christ; until we all attain to the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to a **mature man**, to the measure of the stature which belongs to the fullness of Christ. As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming. (Ephesians 4.11-14)*

The way to grow “unto a perfect man” and “unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ” is to study the Bible on your own. This section is designed to help you study the Bible by yourself. Try to complete as many steps as possible. If you cannot complete an entire step do as much as you can and go to the next step.

The first step in this section deals with memorizing and meditating on Scripture. There are 139 suggested verses to

memorize. If you cannot memorize all of them choose the ones you want to memorize and hide them in your heart. Move on to the second exercise and meditate on as many of the suggested 98 passages as you can.

Remember, these steps are designed to be worked through at the same time. While you are memorizing and meditating on the passages in Step 11 start on Step 12 “How to do an exegetical study.” If you finish Step 12 before you finish Step 11 move on to the next step.



HIDE THE WORD IN YOUR HEART

Hide the Word in Your Heart not only shows you how to memorize Scripture it shows you why it is vital for all believers in YAHSHUA Messiah to do so daily.

To learn why all believers must memorize Scripture to be fully used by YAHWEH order your copy of *Hide the Word in Your Heart*. Email the DOV Book Shoppe – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP ELEVEN

MEMORIZING AND MEDITATING ON SCRIPTURE

Memorizing and meditating on Scripture is the most important activity any believer can engage in. Prayer is extremely important but if a believer prays a great deal and rarely memorizes and meditates on Scripture his prayers become an abomination to God:

He who turns away his ear from listening to the law, even his prayer is an abomination. (Proverbs 28.9)

Prayer warriors read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture a great deal. A prayer warrior is a student of the Bible.

If a new-born believer spent a great deal of his time praying and he never studied Scripture he would not grow spiritually. Spiritual growth and faith comes primarily through reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture. Our faith also grows through trials, tribulations and hardships, but mainly by the intake of Scripture:

So faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ. (Romans 10.17)

To grow in faith and become a spiritual adult one must memorize Scripture and meditate on It. One form of meditation is to study Scripture. Another form is to memorize a verse or

passage and then think about it. Just think and ask the Holy Spirit to give you understanding. You can also ask questions about the passage or verse. You will gain fantastic insights into Scripture when you meditate on It.

Remember, the key to understanding Scripture more than any Bible teacher, preacher, pastor and theologian is to meditate on Scripture:

I have more insight than all my teachers, for Your testimonies are my meditation. (Psalm 119.99)

Anyone can have greater understanding than all of the giants of the faith if they memorize and meditate on Scripture more than those giants. The only ones you cannot have more understanding of Scripture are those who meditate on Scripture more than you do. Keep in mind that memorizing Scripture is commendable, but without daily meditation on Scripture it will only produce knowledge of the Bible. There are millions of believers around the world who have great knowledge of Scripture, but very little understanding and wisdom. There are even millions of non-believers who have greater knowledge of Scripture than the average believer, but they do not have much understanding and wisdom. “*Knowledge makes arrogant*” (1 Corinthians 8.1). Yet if one meditates on Scripture he will be given understanding and wisdom.

Memorization Exercise

Exercise One

Set up your spiritual fitness program and increase the amount of time you spend in prayer and Scripture. Start your memorization program with the basic salvation verses. Then memorize the verses suggested below or choose your own. Try to memorize one verse per week. If you cannot memorize all of them memorize as many as you can.

1. Salvation – Matthew 25.46; Mark 8.36-37; John 1.12; 3.16, 36; 14.6; Acts 4.12; Romans 3.23; 5.8; 6.23; 10.9-10, 13, 17; 2 Cor. 6.2b; Ephesians 2.8-9; Hebrews 9.27; Revelation 20.15.
2. Eternal security – John 5.24; 6.37; 10.27-29; 20.31; 1 John 5.10-13.
3. Blessed hope – 1 Thessalonians 4.16-18; Titus 2.13; 1 John 3.2-3.
4. Holiness/Sanctification – Psalm 119.11; Proverbs 8.13; Romans 3.3-5; 12.1-2; 1 Corinthians 10.31; 2 Corinthians 6.14-18; Galatians 5.13-26; Philippians 3.7-10; James 1.2-5; 1.12-17; 2.1-8; 4.1-10; 1 Peter 1.13-19; 2.15-16; 1 Peter 2.11-21; 1 Peter 4.1-4; 2 Peter 1.5-11; 1 John 2.15-17.
5. Humility – Romans 12.16; Phil. 2.1-5; James 4.6-10.
6. Love – Rom. 12.9; 1 Cor. 13.1-13; 1 John 3.16-18.
7. Peace – Philippians 4.7.
8. Prayer – Matthew 7.7; John 14.13-14; 1 John 3.22; 5.14.
9. Prosperity – Psalm 1.
10. Protection – Psalm 23.
11. Spiritual warfare – Ephesians 6.10-18.
12. Strength – Isaiah 40.29-31; Ephesians 3.16; Phil. 4.13.
13. Sufficiency – Philippians 4.19.
14. Temptation – 1 Corinthians 10.13.
15. Tongue – James 3.1-18.

It will take you almost three years to memorize the above 139 verses if you memorize one verse a week. Stay with it and review them daily.

Meditation Exercises

We are commanded to meditate on Scripture “*day and night*” (Joshua 1.8). True disciples of YAHSHUA “*delight in*

the law of God” and they meditate on His Word “*day and night*” (Psalm 1.2). These exercises are designed to help you meditate on Scripture.

Exercise one

Pick a favorite verse and spend some time just thinking about it. Write down what comes to you. After you have spent ten minutes or more doing this – meditate on that verse or passage asking the following questions and write down your answers:

1. What doctrine(s) is found in this passage?
2. What message is being conveyed to me?
3. How should the message change my life?
4. What does YAHWEH want me to do?

Passages to meditate on:

Psalm 1	Psalm 23
Psalm 37.1-11	Psalm 119.9-16, 97-104
Proverbs 1.1-7	Proverbs 2.1-12
Proverbs 3.1-12	Proverbs 3.13-18
Proverbs 6.16-19	Proverbs 8.32-36
Isaiah 43.10-12; 44.6	Isaiah 52.13-53.12
Isaiah 55.6-11	Isaiah 65.17-25
Jeremiah 1.4-12	Jeremiah 17.5-11
Matthew 5.1-12	Matthew 5.13-16
Matthew 5.38-48	Matthew 6.9-13
Matthew 6.19-34	Matthew 7.1-5
Matthew 12.1-8	Matthew 28.19-20
John 1.1-14	John 6.32-40
John 8.31-36	John 10.1-15
John 10.27-30	John 14.1-6
John 14.13-18	John 14.23-27
John 15.1-6	John 15.7-14
John 15.15-21	John 16.7-11
John 17.15-23	John 21.19, 22

Romans 3.10-18	Romans 5.1-5
Romans 6.1-23	Romans 8.28-30
Romans 9.10-24	Romans 12.1-2
Romans 12.9-16	Romans 12.17-21
1 Corinthians 13.1-13	2 Corinthians 5.17-21
2 Corinthians 6.14-18	2 Corinthians 9.6-15
2 Corinthians 11.23-33	2 Corinthians 13.5
Galatians 5.13-26	Galatians 6.1-10
Ephesians 2.8-10	Ephesians 4.11-16
Ephesians 6.10-18	Daniel 10.13, 20-21
Philippians 2.2-8	Philippians 3.7-8
Philippians 4.4-9	Colossians 1.9-12
1 Thessalonians 4.13-18	1 Timothy 6.9-12
2 Timothy 2.15	2 Timothy 4.1-5
Hebrews 2.1-3	Hebrews 3.12-13
Hebrews 4.12-13	Hebrews 5.11-6.3
Hebrews 10.32-39	Hebrews 11.1-40
Hebrews 12.1-17	Hebrews 13.1-9
Hebrews 13.15-17	James 1.2-10
James 1.19-20	James 1.22-27
James 2.14-20	James 3.1-18
James 4.1-12	James 4.13-17
1 Peter 1.13-16	1 Peter 2.20-21
1 Peter 3.1-9	1 Peter 5.5-10
2 Peter 1.5-9	2 Peter 1.4-11
1 John 1.6-10	1 John 2.8-11
1 John 2.15-17	1 John 2.27-29
1 John 3.15-24	1 John 5.10-14
Revelation 20.11-15	Revelation 21.1-7; 22.1-5

If you meditate on one of these 98 passages each week you will complete them in less than two years.

Exercise two

Choose a subject or topic and think about it. Write down the thoughts that come to you. Get your study Bible out and

write down several verses that deal with the subject. Meditate on each verse or passage and write down your thoughts about it. Note what you learned concerning this subject and how it affects your life.

Topics and passages to consider meditating on:

1. Grace (Romans 5.2, 15; 11.6; 12.3, 6; Ephesians 2.8-10).
2. Faith (2 Chronicles 20.20; Habakkuk. 2.4; Matthew 17.20; Luke 17.5; Romans 1.17; 10.17; Ephesians 6.16; Hebrews 11; James 2.17; 1 John 5.4).
3. Discipleship (Matthew 16.24; 28.19-20; Luke 14.26-33; John 15.8; 2 Timothy 2.2).
4. Prayer (Ephesians 6.18; 1 Thes. 5.17; 1 Timothy 2.1-4).
5. Study of Scripture (Deut. 17.19; 31.12; Isaiah 34.16; Hosea 6.3; John 5.39; Acts 2.42; 5.42; 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15).
6. Fellowship of the brethren (Psalm 119.63; Prov. 13.20; Acts 2.42; 5.42; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25; 1 John 1.7).
7. Love of the brethren (Leviticus 25.35; John 13.34-35; 15.12-13; Romans 12.9, 13; 1 Thess. 3.12; 1 Peter 1.22; 1 John 3.16-18).
8. Love of all men (Leviticus 19.34; Proverbs 25.21; Matthew 5.43-48; Romans 12.17-21; Hebrews 13.2).
9. Hell and the Lake of Fire, and eternity (Psalm 11.6; 140.10; Luke 16.19-31; Matthew 25.41, 46; Romans 12.20; Revelation 14.9-11; 20.10-15; 21.8).
10. Humility (Proverbs 3.34; 15.33; Romans 12.3, 16; Philippians 2.3-5; James 4.6, 10; 1 Peter 5.5-6).
11. Giving (Exodus 25.2; Leviticus 25.35; Numbers 31.50; Deuteronomy 15.7; 16.17; Proverbs 3.9; 11.24-25; 19.17; 21.13; 22.9; 28.27; Ecclesiastes 5.13; 11.1; Isaiah 58.7; Matthew 5.42; 6.3; Luke 6.38; 12.33; Acts 11.29; Romans 12.13; 2 Corinthians 9.6-15; Hebrews 13.1-2; James 1.27; 1 Peter 4.9).
12. Rewards (Matthew 5.11-12; 25.23; Luke 6.35; 1 Cor. 3.12-15; 9.25; Ephesians 6.8; 2 Timothy 4.8; Hebrews 11.6, 26; James 1.12; Revelation 3.11; 22.12).

13. Sanctification (Leviticus 11.44-45; 19.2; 20.7; Matthew 5.48; Romans 12.1-2; 1 Peter 1.15-16; 1 John 5.21).
14. Spiritual warfare (2 Corinthians 10.3-5; Galatians 5.13-26; Eph. 6.10-18; 1 Thess. 5.8; 2 Tim 2.4; Heb. 4.12).
15. Suffering and persecution (Acts 5.40-42; Romans 8.17; Philippians 1.29; 3.10; 2 Thessalonians 1.5; 2 Timothy 1.8; 2.3, 9; 3.12; 1 Peter 2.20-21; 4.19).
16. Temptation (1 Corinthians 10.13; James 1.13-16).

For those of you who respect the opinions of famous pastors read what these three have said about memorizing Scripture:



“I am convinced that one of the greatest things we can do is to memorize Scripture.” **(Billy Graham)**



“Scripture memory is a habit that most Christians have never even tried, but getting your members to hide God's word in their hearts brings personal revival and renewal.” (Rick Warren)



“I know of no other single practice in the Christian life more rewarding, practically speaking, than memorizing Scripture...No other single exercise pays greater spiritual dividends! Your prayer life will be strengthened. Your witnessing will be sharper and much more effective. Your attitudes and outlook will begin to change. Your mind will become alert and observant. Your confidence and assurance will be enhanced. Your faith will be solidified.” (Chuck Swindoll)

STEP TWELVE

HOW TO DO AN EXEGETICAL STUDY

Every disciple should know how to do an exegetical study to be able to teach the Infallible, Holy Word of God accurately. Do the exercises and you will learn how to do a study.

The basic hermeneutical principle that should be adhered to with no variation is:

Take everything literally in context, unless the Scriptures say it is symbolic or unless it is physically impossible for it to be or to take place in a literal manner.

An example of how this principle works is found in Revelation 12:

Then another sign appeared in heaven: and behold, a great red dragon having seven heads and ten horns, and on his heads were seven diadems. And his tail swept away a third of the stars of heaven and threw them to the earth... (Revelation 12.3-4a)

There never has been nor will there be a literal dragon with seven heads and ten horns. Even if there were such a creature it could not sweep a third of the stars in space and cast them down to Earth. Therefore, the dragon and the stars are symbolic. In verse nine it says the Devil, who is called a “*great dragon*,” and his angels were cast down to Earth. We

can determine from this that the devil is the dragon and the angels are the stars.

We also know from Daniel 8.9-11 that the “*little horn*” (Antichrist) casts some of the stars of heaven down to Earth. These stars are fallen angels that joined the devil in his rebellion. We see that the Devil and the Antichrist together cast down angels to Earth. We know the “*little horn*” is the Antichrist because in verse eleven of Daniel 8 he claims to be equal to the “*prince of the host*” (Jesus Christ). In 2 Thessalonians 2.4 we see the Antichrist will claim to be “*God*.”

In Revelation 9 there are two separate groups of demonic creatures mentioned (9.1-11; 16-19). They are real and not symbolic. It is not impossible for there to be creatures as depicted in these passages. They do not do things that are physically impossible for a creature to do.

Another example is found in Revelation 3.12:

“He who overcomes, I will make him a pillar in the temple of My God, and he will not go out from it anymore; and I will write on him the name of My God, and the name of the city of My God, the new Jerusalem, which comes down out of heaven from My God, and My new name.”

Jesus promises to make all believers a pillar in the temple of His God. We know this is symbolic because it would mean no believer would ever be able to move through all eternity. That would be a nightmare. What good would New Jerusalem be if everyone in it was a pillar?

What is it symbolic of? It means that believers will have a permanent residence in New Jerusalem (John 14.2) and we will never be put out of New Jerusalem.

Will all believers have the name of the Father, the new name of the Son and New Jerusalem on our foreheads? It is physically possible to do this and it was done in the Old Testament and also in the Tribulation. One angel went through Jerusalem and put a physical mark on the foreheads of the righteous. Then six angels

of war followed and they killed every man, woman and child they came across who did NOT have a mark on their forehead (Ezekiel 9.1-11). The mark that believers will get when they arrive in New Jerusalem will not be one of protection but identification. There will be several groups of people who will have access to New Jerusalem:

1. Old Testament believers
2. New Testament believers
3. Tribulation believers
4. Millennial Kingdom believers

Yet of these four groups of believers only the New Testament believers are promised to have a dwelling in New Jerusalem (John 14.2). The mark on the forehead with the names of the Father, Son and New Jerusalem identifies New Testament believers as being residents of the city. The other three groups will have homes outside New Jerusalem on the new Earth. The other groups may have the name of the Father and the Son written on their foreheads, but not New Jerusalem. We are not told this in the Bible, but it is a logical deduction.

How to do a study

1. Determine who the message is being given to and why.
2. Determine if the message is literal or symbolic.
3. Determine the context (What is the subject).
4. Determine the dispensation the passage applies to and if the message is for us today or for only those of the Old Testament dispensation or for a later dispensation (Tribulation or Millennial and Eternal Kingdoms).
5. Find as many passages dealing with the subject as you can.
6. Put together the message of all the passages to determine the message.
7. Give clear statements far more importance than unclear statements.
8. Base the message of an unclear statement on a clear one.

For an example of an exegetical study see Step 15. Do exegetical studies of the following passages:

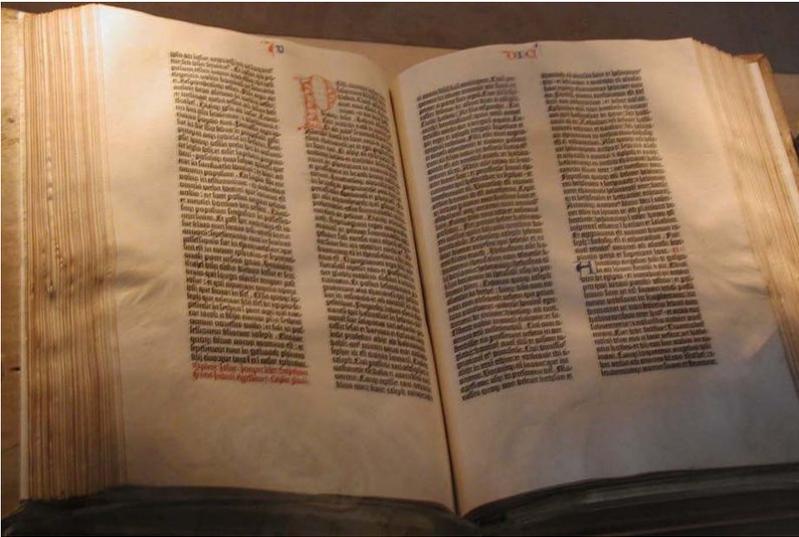
1. Zechariah 14.2; Luke 21.24; Revelation 11.2 (When will the times of the Gentiles cease?)
2. Matthew 7.21-23; Luke 13.24; 2 Corinthians 13.5 (Explain if it is possible for a person who thinks they are saved and are serving the Lord to not be saved.)
3. Matthew 12.22-32 (Explain what the blasphemy of Holy Spirit is.)
4. 1 Thessalonians 5.1-6 (Explain what the “*day of the Lord*” is; what will happen prior to it; and if believers will be here when it comes.)
5. 2 Thessalonians 2.1-3 (Explain what “*the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him*” is. Explain what “*that day*” in verse 3 is, and what two things take place before that day.)
6. Revelation 20.1-3 (Explain whether or not a literal angel takes a literal chain to bind the devil, and if the devil is cast into a bottomless pit.)
7. Revelation 21.10-22.5 (Explain whether or not the description of the New Jerusalem are literal or symbolic and why.)

STEP THIRTEEN

EXEGETICAL STUDIES OF SANCTIFICATION PASSAGES

Do an exegetical study of the following sanctification passages:

Romans 5.3-5
Romans 6.6-18
Romans 12.1-3
Romans 12.9-21
1 Corinthians 13.1-8
Galatians 5.13-26
Ephesians 4.22-32
Ephesians 5.1-12
Ephesians 6.10-18
Philippians 2.1-5
Philippians 3.7-10
James 1.2-8
James 1.12-17
James 3.1-18
James 4.6-10
1 Peter 1.13-19
1 Peter 2.11-21
1 Peter 3.8-17
1 Peter 4.1-4
1 Peter 4.12-19
2 Peter 1.5-11
1 John 2.15-17



PROVERBS TO LIVE BY

Proverbs is filled with practical advice on how to live a holy life that is pleasing to YAHWEH and will bring glory to Him. We encourage every believer in YAHSHUA Messiah to study Proverbs daily. This book is an aid to assist you in that great privilege.

To order your copy of *Proverbs to Live By* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP FOURTEEN

MISUNDERSTOOD PASSAGES

Do an exegetical study of these misunderstood passages:

Old Testament

1. Genesis 3.16 – Explain whether Eve was cursed to desire to have Adam rule over her or if she was cursed to be ruled over by Adam and that she would hate it and want to usurp his authority over her.
2. Genesis 22.17; 24.60 – Explain what the “*gates of his enemies*” are.
3. 2 Samuel 7.10-16 – Explain what the prophecy is all about and what place God would appoint for Israel to move to and dwell there. At the time of this prophecy the Hebrew people were living in Israel. Where did the Hebrew people move to where they lived in peace and had rest from their enemies? Also explain who sat on the throne of King David (1 Kings 2.4; Psalm 89.29, 36; Jeremiah 33.17) from the time that the last king of Israel, Zedekiah, was deposed by Nebuchadnezzar (2 Kings 25.1-7; 2 Chronicles 36.11-23) until today.
4. Isaiah 3.12 – Explain whether or not women should be equal to men in the secular world and be able to hold any position, including political office, judge, police, soldier, etc.

5. Isaiah 19.19 – Explain what the altar and the pillar are that will be in the midst of Egypt.
6. Ezekiel 35.10-15; 36.5 – Explain when Edom took possession of the land of Israel and when they were judged or will be judged.
7. Malachi 3.10 – Explain whether or not this promise is a promise to the local church of the Church Age and what the promise is.
8. Zechariah 14.2 – Explain when this happens.

New Testament

1. Romans 5.12-14 – Explain whether or not the death that Adam brought was only to people or to all living things.
2. Romans 8.26-27 – Explain if the intercession by the Holy Spirit is audible or not and what that means for some denominations.
3. Romans 12.19-20 – Explain if a Christian is kind to one who harms him the result will be greater punishment for that person or none at all.
4. 1 Corinthians 2.9-10, 16 – Explain whether or not it is possible to know what God has prepared for those who love Him.
5. 1 Corinthians 11.20-34 – Explain whether or not the warning is to be careful of the manner of partaking of communion or if one must be living a holy life to take it.
6. 1 Corinthians 14.34 – Explain whether or not women can speak in a worship service and give biblical reasons.

7. 1 Corinthians 15:51-53 – Explain what specific event takes place in the twinkling of an eye.
8. 2 Corinthians 10:3-6 – Explain if we are commanded here to take every thought we have captive to Christ or something else.
9. 1 Timothy 2:9-15 – Explain whether or not women can teach men in a church or home Bible study and if they can be a pastor.
10. Revelation 3:20 – Explain whether or not this passage is talking about salvation or fellowship with Jesus.
11. Revelation 4:10 – Explain whether or not all the saints cast their crowns at the feet of Jesus or just the 24 elders.
12. Revelation 11:2 – Explain when the “*times of the Gentiles*” are fulfilled comparing this with Luke 21:24; Romans 11:25.



HOW TO CHOOSE A CHURCH

This book gives every believer in YAHSHUA Messiah all the knowledge he needs to choose the right church for him (and his family). It explains the best church if you are single and looking for a spouse. It also shows you how to pick a church that is right for your unbelieving spouse. If you are married with children it explains what church is best for the children.

If you are a true disciple of YAHSHUA and you desire to find a church that needs dedicated disciples to exercise their gifts for the edification of the congregation and spreading of the Gospel you will learn how to locate that church.

To order your copy of *How to Choose a Church* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP FIFTEEN

EXEGETICAL STUDIES OF BOOKS

Start with the General Epistles (James through Jude) in the New Testament, and then do the smaller epistles of Paul (Galatians through Philemon), and finally the larger ones (1 & 2 Corinthians, Romans and Hebrews last). Those two letters are the most complex and you will need much experience before you tackle them. You may also want to do some studies in the Psalms and Proverbs while working on the New Testament. You can do studies in any book of the Bible, but we recommend you start with the New Testament, Psalms and Proverbs before tackling the remainder of the Old Testament. You can move on to Steps 16 through 19 while you are working on this step.

When you do exegetical studies do not use commentaries, systematic theology books or any helps, except those noted in Step One. Do your studies using the Bible as your only source relying on the Holy Spirit to teach you (1 John 2.27). Once you have completed your exegetical study you can then compare it with commentaries.

Example of an exegetical study of a book

True love of the brethren

(3.16-24) *We know love by this, that He laid down His life for us; and we ought to lay down our lives for the*

brethren. 17 But whoever has the world's goods, and sees his brother in need and closes his heart against him, how does the love of God abide in him? 18 Little children, let us not love with word or with tongue, but in deed and truth. 19 We will know by this that we are of the truth, and will assure our heart before Him 20 in whatever our heart condemns us; for God is greater than our heart and knows all things. 21 Beloved, if our heart does not condemn us, we have confidence before God; 22 and whatever we ask we receive from Him, because we keep His commandments and do the things that are pleasing in His sight. 23 This is His commandment, that we believe in the name of His Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, just as He commanded us. 24 The one who keeps His commandments abides in Him, and He in him. We know by this that He abides in us, by the Spirit whom He has given us.

(3.16-18) We know that Jesus loves us because He died for us. His death on the cross at the hands of wicked men was the ultimate act of love. Even though there may be times in our lives when we feel as though He does not love us we can look back at His sacrifice on the cross and know for certain that He always has, does and will love us. His love for us is not dependent on our feelings, obedience or faithfulness, but upon His faithfulness.

In the same way we are to love the brethren – with a pure love that is not based on their behavior, but on the faithfulness of Jesus. Since He is always faithful we should be too (2 Timothy 2.13; 1 Corinthians 10.13; 2 Corinthians 1.8; 1 Thessalonians 5.24; 2 Thes. 3.3; Hebrews 2.17; 3.6; 10.23).

Our love should be so strong that we are willing to die physically for the brethren. This is the greatest act of love (1 John 15.13). The opportunity to die for another does not come along very often, but we all have the opportunity to help the brethren regularly.

Anyone who claims to love the brethren should be eager to help them when they have true spiritual and physical needs. Those who fail to help their brothers and sisters do not have the love of God living in them – they are not walking in the SPIRIT. Their faith is dead (James 2.15-17) and they are backslidden – living in the flesh.

Obviously, if there is a sluggard among the brethren who refuses to work and is always in need you should not help him. Instead let him go without food (2 Thessalonians 3.10).

Instead of saying we love the brethren we should show it by our actions. If you rarely have the opportunity to help someone and you would like to become more involved, get to know more brothers and sisters. Once you become a friend they will let you know what their needs are.

(3.19-22) True love of the brethren is positive evidence that we are truly born from above and it gives us assurance in our walk with the Lord. When we sin and feel guilty for what we have done we should not go on a guilt trip. Instead we must understand that God knows we will sin from time to time and He has forgiven and cleansed us of all sins we have and will commit.

When we live a holy life we have greater confidence before God and can come boldly before the throne of grace. We also have confidence to make petitions when we keep His commandments and do the things that are pleasing to Him.

There are three basic ingredients needed before a believer can make a petition before God and expect it to be answered. They are: you must not be practicing sin or have committed a sin without repenting of it and asking forgiveness; you must obey the commandments that Jesus has given us in His Word; and you must live a life that is pleasing to Him.

The first two requirements are self-explanatory. It is the third requirement, to live a life pleasing to God that is controversial. Some argue they have liberty to do anything that is not forbidden by the Scriptures, but they miss the point of why we are here.

We are ambassadors of God (2 Corinthians 5.20). whose job it is to make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, and to teach them to observe all that Jesus has commanded us (Matthew 28.19-20). We are not to spend our time seeing how far we can go in “Christian liberty” before we cross the line. Instead we are to love God with all our heart, soul, might (Deuteronomy 6.5) and mind (Mark 12.29) and do everything to the glory of God (1 Corinthians 10.31).

(3.23) The primary commandment that God gave us is to believe in His Son Jesus Messiah. We must obey that command before we obey any other. If a person tries to obey every command that God and Jesus have given mankind without believing in Jesus it is all in vain. No one can work their way into Heaven by obedience to the commandments of God. The only way to be saved, born from above, is to trust Jesus to save you. Once you have done that and are redeemed by the blood of Jesus (1 Peter 1.18-19; Revelation 5.9) you should keep the rest of the commandments starting with the second most important commandment, to love the brethren.

Even in the Old Testament dispensation the second commandment after loving God with all your being was to love your neighbor (Deuteronomy 6.4-5). We are to love the brethren first and then the wicked so we can lead them to Jesus.

(3.24) All believers who abide in Jesus as He commanded us to (John 15.4-7) do so by keeping His commandments. If you do not obey Him you are not abiding in Him and are in danger of being taken home early (John 15.2, 6). He abides in us no matter what we do. He does not leave us when we disobey Him for He said He and His Father would make their home in us (John 14.23). The Holy Spirit also lives in us and cannot leave us no matter how much we sin (Romans 8.9-11; 1 Corinthians 3.16; 6.19-20; 2 Cor. 5.5; 6.16; James 4.5). Jesus promised the other Helper will be with us forever (John 14.16).

All three members of the Trinity live in us and none of Them ever leave. If we lead a life of sin and refuse to repent They will

take us home early, but never leave us. You cannot lose your salvation for when you are born anew from above you passed out of death into life and were given eternal life (John 5.24). Eternal life is not eternal if you can have it taken away.



PETER AND JUDE

This book gives the reader the keys for living a holy life and how to bring glory to YAHWEH our Father. It also gives you an insight into the realm of angels. To order your copy of *Peter and Jude* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP SIXTEEN

HOW TO DO A TOPICAL STUDY

Topical studies are easy. Some topics are so extensive it would take a book or two to do a proper study. Determine how large a study you desire to do, and choose specific aspects of the topic to write on. Use your Strong's Concordance to find every passage on the topic. You can also use a Topical Bible to help you get an idea of what to cover. Organize the passages according to sub-topics. Write out an outline and then write down the passages that correspond with each sub-topic. Once you have put together your outline write out your study. If you are a pastor or have been called to be one do not use topical studies for sermon outlines. Go to Step 22 to see how to prepare for a sermon.

Example of a topical study

Disciple's prayer

I. Daily prayer

A. Pray to the Father

1. Open by acknowledging His divinity, holiness, kingship and authority
 - a. His divinity (He is in Heaven)
 - b. His name is holy (Leviticus 20.3; 1 Chronicles 16.10; Psalm 3.21; Ezekiel 20.39; Amos 2.7)
(therefore He is holy – Leviticus 11.44; 19.2; 20.7)

- c. He has a kingdom (Matthew 16.28; Luke 22.30; John 18.36)
- d. His will should be done on Earth as it is in Heaven
- 2. Ask for our daily needs to be met
- 3. Ask for forgiveness of our sins (1 John 1.9) as we forgive and love those who sin against us (Matthew 18.21-22; Luke 17.3-4; Ephesians 4.32; Colossians 3.13; Matthew 5.38-45).
- 4. Ask that He keep us from temptation
- 5. Ask that He deliver us from evil
- B. Why we should pray for our needs
 - 1. We are told to here and elsewhere (Matthew 7.7; Luke 18.1-8; John 16.24)
 - 2. We must first seek the Father and His kingdom (Matthew 6.33)
 - 3. We must also not be anxious about our needs (Matt.. 6.31-34)
- C. Why we should pray for forgiveness of our sins
 - 1. We sin many times every day in thought, word, deed, motives
 - 3. Sin interferes with our fellowship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit (Psalm 66.18; Isaiah 59.2; 64.7)
 - 4. We must obviously confess our sins before they are forgiven (1 John 1.9)
 - 4. We must also forgive those who sin against us
 - a. If we do not forgive others the Father will not forgive us
 - b. When we refuse to forgive others that is a sin
 - 5. The forgiveness is temporal which is required for fellowship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit (1 John 1.9)
 - a. All of our sins were paid for at the cross by the blood of Jesus (Luke 22.20; Romans 3.25; Colossians 1.20; Hebrews 9.12, 14; 10.19, 29; 13.20; 1 John 1.7; Revelation 1.5; 5.9)
 - b. All of our sins were forgiven at the moment we trusted Jesus to save us (Eph. 1.7; Col. 1.13-14)
 - 6. We must keep short accounts with the Father

- a. We must ask forgiveness immediately after sinning
 - b. A blanket prayer of forgiveness at the end of the day is no good
- D. Close by acknowledging His kingship, power and glory
1. He has a kingdom (Matthew 16.28; Luke 22.30; John 18.36)
 2. He is all powerful (Gen. 1.1; Matt. 19.26; Luke 1.37)
 3. All glory is His (Isaiah 42.8; 48.11)

Disciple's prayer

The prayer that Jesus gave His disciples was a sample prayer intended to show them what should be included in a prayer. He did not intend for them to pray that word-for-word day in and day out.

“Pray, then, in this way: ‘Our Father who is in heaven, Hallowed be Your name. Your kingdom come. Your will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. ‘Give us this day our daily bread. And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. And do not lead us into temptation, but deliver us from evil. [For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.]”
 (Matthew 6.9-13)

We should open all public prayers by acknowledging the Father is divine, holy and in charge of everything. We do not have to do that in a formal and structured manner. One can open by saying, “Dear Holy Father, Creator of all, I ask that your will be done in my life.” In our personal prayers we do not have to acknowledge His divinity, holiness and authority. If you feel compelled to you can. We can open by saying, “*Abba Father*” (Romans 8.15) as Jesus did (Mark 14.36). It is a good habit to get into to say at the beginning and or end of our prayers that His will be done in our lives.

We are to ask for our daily needs, but we should not ask for our worldly desires to be fulfilled (1 John 2.15-17). We should not ask for money, a house, a car, a good-paying job, a spouse,

etc. Instead we should ask that the Lord provide the job He wants us to have so we can share the gospel with those at work. We should ask for a dwelling where we can reach out to our neighbors and share the gospel. We should ask for a spouse that can help us serve the Lord rather than one that is beautiful/handsome, rich, popular, famous, etc.

We should ask for needs and nothing more. There is nothing wrong with asking for food, clothing, housing, medical care, etc. If you have specific items that you need to survive, ask for them.

We also are to be thankful for everything the Lord has given us. It is good to get into the daily habit of thanking the Lord for the things He has given you. Thank Him for another day to serve Him. Thank Him for your – spouse, children, parents, spiritual brothers and sisters, friends, dwelling place, job, vehicles, bicycle, motorcycle, boat, food, utilities, clothing, furniture, refrigerator, stove, washer and dryer, television, computer, cell phone, DVD player, radio, etc. The sacrifice of praise and thanksgiving is special to God (Hebrews 13.15).

We must also remember that for every request we make we need to submit to the will of the Father as Jesus did (Matthew 25.39). Whether the request is for us or others we should always say, “Your will be done.” We are also to ask according to the will of the Father (1 John 5.14). How do we know what His will is? There is only one way to learn what the will of the Father is for us and others – study His Word daily (2 Timothy 2.15). The more we study His holy Word the more we will know what His will is. We need to be mindful that if we do not study His Word He will not respond to our prayers:

He who turns away his ear from listening to the law, even his prayer is an abomination. (Proverbs 28.9)

If your prayers are not being answered or they are being answered with a no, the problem could be you are not studying the Bible. Every Christian should be reading and studying the Bible every day. We should also memorize and meditate on

Scripture daily. We are to be immersed in the Word of God. It should be our spiritual food as Jesus said (Matthew 4.4) quoting Moses:

“He humbled you and let you be hungry, and fed you with manna which you did not know, nor did your fathers know, that He might make you understand that man does not live by bread alone, but man lives by everything that proceeds out of the mouth of the LORD.”
(Deuteronomy 8.3)

No one can live very long without food and water. Moses and Jesus fasted for 40 days and nights (Matthew 4.2), but very few people can do that. Most people eat three meals a day plus snacks. To stay healthy a person must eat food and drink water. The same is true about spiritual health. To grow and remain spiritually healthy a Christian must eat spiritual food every day. That means one needs to daily listen to the Word (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; Proverbs 8.34; Luke 8.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Revelation 1.3), read Scripture (Deuteronomy 17.19; Psalm 42.1-2; 63.1; 143.6; Revelation 1.3), study Scripture (Deuteronomy 8.3; Matthew 4.4; Proverbs 2.1-5; 8.34; 22.17; John 5.39; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15; 3.15), memorize Scripture (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Romans 10.8) and meditate on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; 1 Timothy 4.15).

Christians should also pray every day throughout the day (Matthew 7.7; Luke 18.1; John 16.24; 1 Thessalonians 5.17; James 1.5). We are to pray for our needs and the needs of others. Fellowshiping with the brethren as often as possible is important (Psalm 119.63; Proverbs 13.20; Acts 2.42, 46-47; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25) along with sharing the Gospel as the Holy Spirit leads (Psalm 96.2; Acts 2.47; 1 Peter 3.15).

Another thing that every Christian should do several times each day is to ask forgiveness for his sins. We all sin every day (1 John 1.8, 10).

If we confess our sins, He is faithful and righteous to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. (1 John 1.9)

The forgiveness and cleansing of our sins on a daily basis is for fellowship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. When we sin we break fellowship with Them. We need to confess our sins to restore that fellowship. The same is true when we sin against each other. We break fellowship with one another. When we forgive one another we restore fellowship. When we do not forgive those who sin against us our fellowship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit remains broken. Our fellowship with Them is the most important thing in our life. That is why we must always forgive those who sin against us, whether they are saved or not saved (Matthew 6.14-15). Along with forgiveness we must not hate those who sin against us or persecute us. We must love them with a holy (*agape*) love (Matthew 5.38-45).

We must forgive our brothers and sisters when they sin against us not only because we are commanded to (Matthew 18.21-22; Luke 17.3-4; Ephesians 4.32; Colossians 3.13), but in order to keep peace and harmony in the church. Those who do not forgive others are guilty of causing dissension and strife in the church. Dissension among people is a deed of the flesh (Galatians 5.20), and causing strife among the brethren is an abomination to God (Proverbs 6.16-19).

If we do not forgive those who sin against us our Father will not forgive us (Mark 11.25-26). It is also a sin to refuse to forgive others (Matthew 18.23-35). Since God has forgiven us of all our sins against Him can we do anything less for those who sin against us? Are we more important than God?

All of our sins were paid for and forgiven at the cross (Luke 22.20; Romans 3.25; Ephesians 1.7; Colossians 1.13-14, 20; Hebrews 9.12, 14; 10.19, 29; 13.20; 1 John 1.7;

Revelation 1.5; 5.9). Yet we must have temporal forgiveness by God for continual fellowship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit (1 John 1.9). Keep short accounts with God. When you sin ask for forgiveness right there and move on. Blanket prayers for forgiveness at the end of the day are no good.

We not only are to pray for our physical needs but also for our spiritual needs. The spiritual needs we can pray for are – strength (Philippians 4.13), increased faith (Luke 17.5-10; Romans 10.17), help to trust in God (Psalm 37.3-5; 118.8; Proverbs 3.5-6; 16.20; 29.25; Isaiah 26.3-4; 50.10), knowledge, understanding and wisdom (Proverbs 2.6-7; 3.13-14; 9.10; 10.14; 16.20; James 1.5), good and wise friends (Proverbs 2.20; 13.20) and the ability to see the righteous path God wants us to walk (Proverbs 2.20). We must always remember that all of our prayers are an abomination to God if we do not study the Bible every day (Proverbs 28.9). Speaking to God (prayer), but rarely listening to Him (Bible study) is the height of arrogance. Which is more important – speaking to God or listening to Him?

Every Christian needs spiritual strength. The main way to increase one's spiritual strength is through prayer and study of the Word. It is through these two daily activities that we increase our faith. Since Jesus spent long hours in prayer (Mark 1.35; 6.46; Luke 5.16) then so should we. Sometimes He prayed all night (Luke 6.12). According to Romans 10.17 faith comes by the Word. To increase your faith you must increase your prayer and Bible time.

We should also ask God to help us trust in Him for all things. When we have a decision to make about most anything we should ask for guidance to make the right one. It is also a good idea to get wise counsel (Proverbs 1.5; 11.14; 12.15; 15.22; 20.18; 24.6).

Every time we open the Bible we should ask for knowledge and understanding of the Scriptures (Proverbs 3.13-14; 9.10; 10.14; 16.20). Knowledge and understanding of Scripture is more important than riches, fame or anything you can think of (Proverbs 8.10; 16.16). Along with knowledge and understanding we can ask for wisdom (Proverbs 2.6-7; James

1.5) which is even more valuable than knowledge and understanding (Job 28.12-19; Proverbs 3.13-15; 8.11; 16.16).

The way we obtain wisdom is by wise counsel (Proverbs 13.10). The wisest counsel in the universe is found in the Bible. If you want the best counsel study the Bible (Proverbs 3.1-4). If you cannot find the answer to your question or problem in the Bible, seek counsel from a wise man (Proverbs 12.15; 19.20).

Another way to gain wisdom is to fellowship with wise men (Proverbs 13.20). We can also gain great wisdom by meditation on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; 1 Timothy 4.15). When we earnestly pray for wisdom and we treasure the Scriptures more than our daily food we will be given wisdom. Those who obtain wisdom love their own souls (Proverbs 19.8).

We should pray for God to lead us to wise men because it is through fellowship with them that one can become wise (Proverbs 13.20).

Asking God to show us the path that He wants us to walk (Proverbs 2.20) is important. We can also ask Him to keep us from going down the wrong paths.

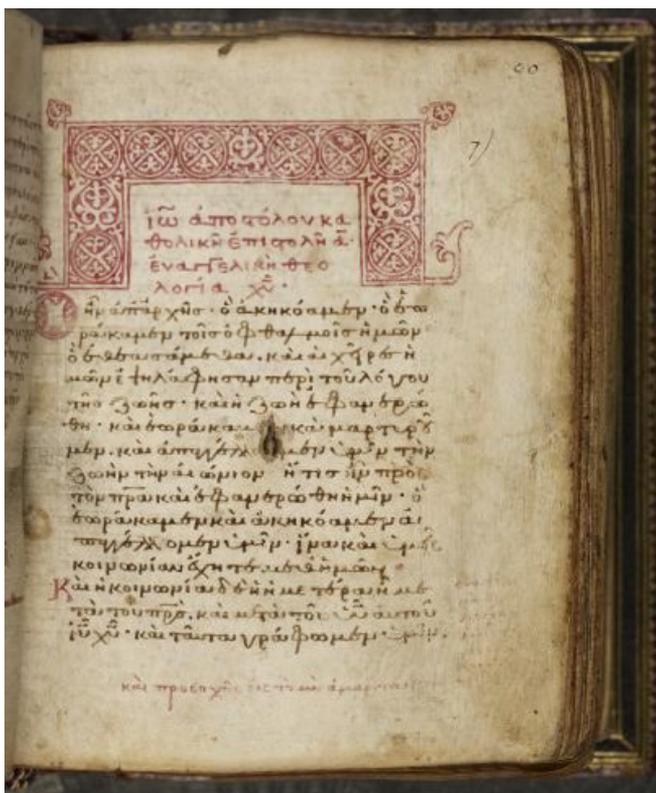
Keep in mind that none of our prayers will be answered in the positive if we neglect the daily study of Scripture (Proverbs 28.9).

We can also ask our Father to not lead us into testing, but to deliver us from evil. Most Bibles translate the Greek word *peirasmos* as “temptation.” The best translation is “testing” or “trial” with “beneficial purpose and effect” (*Vine’s*, p. 1140). Even though God tests us at times, we are to pray that He does not. We must remember that God knows the end from the beginning (Isaiah 46.10). He tests us to show us how strong or weak our faith is (Ecclesiastes 3.18). When we fail a test it means we need to strengthen our faith. We do that by being in the Word, in prayer and in fellowship more than before.

The evil is a reference to the devil or possibly evil people or evil things. The Greek word *poneros* is used of the devil several times (Matthew 5.37; 13.19, 38; John 17.15; Ephesians

6.16; 2 Thessalonians 3.3; 1 John 2.13-14; 3.12; 5.18-19). It is also used to refer to evil people and things (*Vine's*, p. 391). We should pray every day that God deliver us from the evil one (the devil), evil people and evil things.

When we conclude our prayers we need to remember that God is King of the universe and in complete control of every atom in His creation. We are to praise Him and give Him all the glory for everything in our lives, whether good or bad.



JOHN'S LETTERS

This book gives the reader the secrets for living a holy life and how to have an intimate relationship with YAHWEH our Father, YAHSHUA Messiah and the HOLY SPIRIT. It also contains assurance that no true believer can lose his salvation, forfeit it or walk away from it.

To order your copy of *John's Letters* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP SEVENTEEN

TOPICAL STUDIES OF FUNDAMENTAL DOCTRINES

Start topical studies of the fundamental doctrines:

1. Sin
2. Salvation (Explain grace, faith and repentance.)
3. Eternal Security (Explain whether or not a believer is eternally secure in his salvation)
4. Baptism
5. Judgment of the righteous and wicked (Explain the bodily resurrection of the righteous and the wicked.)
6. Eternal life and eternal punishment
7. Heaven
8. Hell and the Lake of Fire
9. Trinity
10. Father
11. Son (Include His deity, virgin birth, sinless life and sacrifice, bodily resurrection, equality with the Father.)
12. Holy Spirit.



MARKS OF A TRUE CHURCH

If you are dissatisfied with the church you attend or may be wondering if your church is a true church this book is for you.

It shows you what a true church is, what the duties of the pastors are, what the duties of the deacons are and what the duties of the members are. After reading this book you will know for certain if your church is a true church. If you discover that it is not a true church and you want to be a member of a true church it will help you find one or start one.

To order your copy of *Marks of a True Church* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP EIGHTEEN

YOUR STATEMENT OF FAITH

Put together your statement of faith. Statements of faith vary, but they should include fundamental doctrines. The following are doctrines which you should include in your statement of faith. You can add more if you want to.

1. God the Father
2. God the Son
3. God the Holy Spirit
4. Trinity
5. Inspiration and infallibility of Scripture
6. Creation
7. Sin
8. Grace and Salvation
9. Judgment
10. Hell (Hades) & the Lake of Fire
11. Tribulation, Rapture, Second Coming, Millennial Kingdom and Eternal Kingdom

A statement of faith is a brief statement concerning a specific doctrine. It is not a study. Keep each statement to a paragraph or two and use Scripture to support them.



NOT BY BREAD ALONE

Moses told the Hebrew people that YAHWEH made them eat manna to make them understand that they are not to live by food alone:

“He humbled you and let you be hungry, and fed you with manna which you did not know, nor did your fathers know, that He might make you understand that man does not live by bread alone, but man lives by everything that proceeds out of the mouth of the LORD.”
(Deuteronomy 8.3)

Most Christians need to hear this truth and this book explains why it is important to read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture every day. It also sounds a warning that Christians who are not in the Word every day may not be born from above.

To order your copy of *Not By Bread Alone* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP NINETEEN

MORE TOPICAL STUDIES

Start topical studies that interest you. Here are some topics you may wish to do studies of:

Angels
Anger
Antichrist
Baptism
Bondslave
Character studies of Bible figures
Chariots of fire
Church
Creation
Daniel Seventieth Week
Discipleship
Duties of pastors
Duties of deacons
Duties of fathers
Duties of mothers
Duties of children
Election versus Free will
Eternal Kingdom
Evangelism
Faith
False Prophet
Fellowship
Gifts of the Holy Spirit
Giving

God the Father
God the Son
God the Holy Spirit
Grace
Greed
Heaven
Hell
Holiness/Sanctification
Humility
Lake of Fire
Love (of God, the brethren and the lost)
Love of money
Marriage
Messiah
Millennial Kingdom
Miracles
New Jerusalem
Obedience
Prayer
Pride
Rapture
Rewards
Satan
Second Advent
Sin
Sovereignty of God
Spiritual warfare
Study of Scripture
Suffering
Temptation
Tongue
Tribulation

PART FOUR

MAKE DISCIPLES

“Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.” (Matthew 28.19-20)

The things which you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses, entrust these to faithful men who will be able to teach others also. (2 Timothy 2.2)



HOW TO START A CHURCH

This book is for the men that YAHWEH has called to be a pastor. It shows you how to know – you have been called of YAHWEH, you meet the biblical requirements of the office, what your duties are and if you are able to perform them, and how to start a church.

If you believe you have been called by YAHWEH to be a pastor you need to read it before you decide to attend a Bible college or seminary.

To order your copy of *How to Start a Church* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP TWENTY

LEADING A BIBLE STUDY

Every Christian should learn how to lead a Bible study. Fathers must know how because they are commanded to do so (Deuteronomy 4.9; 6.6-7; 11.18-19; 32.46; Psalm 78.3, 5; Proverbs 1.8; 2.1; 3.1; 4.1; 6.20) and so should all Christian mothers (Proverbs 1.8; 6.20; 31.26).

To lead a Bible study one must first know the Bible. It is not necessary to know the Bible from cover-to-cover, but it is a goal that everyone who seeks to teach Scripture should have. It is best to teach through the Bible book-by-book. You do not have to start with Genesis and work your way to Revelation.

Choose a book to teach through and master that book. It is best to start with a book that you are familiar with. If you have limited knowledge of the Bible start with the general epistles (James through Jude). Begin with James by reading the entire book once a day for one month. Pray for wisdom as you read through it (James 1.5). If you are capable of writing a commentary/exegetical study (see Step 15) do it. Next write out a teaching outline (see Step 16 and p. 135). Write out discussion/study questions to give to your students (see Step 10). Memorize the key verses in the book. Spend as much time as possible meditating on that book. Continue reading the book once a day until you finish teaching it.

(Note: It is not recommended for pastors to make teaching outlines – see Step 22, page 146.) Although, for someone who has not been called to be a pastor and who has not studied the Bible very much outlines are helpful. Do not think you must

stick to your outline point-by-point as you teach. If the Holy Spirit leads you to teach on something that is not in your outline do it. If your class wants to focus on something that is not in your outline do it unless it is totally unrelated to the passage and you believe it would be a distraction. If you have been studying Scripture for many years study the advice on teaching and preaching in Step 22)

As you study the Bible always keep the perfect rule of understanding in mind:

Take everything literally unless Scripture says it is symbolic or unless it is physically impossible for it to be literal or to take place in a literal manner.

Before each Bible study pray by yourself for wisdom as you teach. Also pray that the Holy Spirit give your students wisdom. If one or more men in your study want to pray with you before the study do it. Before you begin to teach have a time of prayer with everyone in the study. Let some or all of them pray too. Pray as much as possible for the “*prayer of the upright is His delight*” (Proverbs 15.8), and “*He hears the prayer of the righteous*” (Proverbs 15.29). Encourage your students to pray short sentence prayers. If someone prays for several minutes speak with him/her afterward and explain that in group prayer time it is best to offer short prayers. Set an example by your prayers.

Give the students the discussion questions before you begin teaching. Ask them to write out answers to the questions before each lesson. Read the verses or let the students read the verses that you plan to teach on. Then ask them what their answers are for each discussion question. If they answer them correctly congratulate them. If they answer the question incorrectly give them the correct answer and explain the passage as much as is needed. If they answer the question correctly you can explain the passage in more detail using cross references.ther than spoon feeding your students the answers and lecturing them, motivate them to seek out the answers for themselves. Encourage them to study more, and

emphasize the fact that a true disciple thirsts and hungers for God (Psalm 42.2; 63.1); for truth (John 17.17) and for righteousness (Matthew 5.6) each and every day of his life. Also explain that as one grows in knowledge and understanding of the Word one's hunger and thirst for greater knowledge, understanding and wisdom grows. If you do not display a hunger and thirst for the Word in your life and in your teaching, your students will not develop a true hunger and thirst for truth.

Remember to explain that when one has an overpowering hunger and thirst for God, His righteousness and the truth he is to study the Bible (John 7.37; 6.48). All of our spiritual knowledge, understanding and wisdom come from the Bible. It should be our primary source of spiritual food.

It is good to read books about the Bible and transcribed sermons by men who knew the Word and lived it. Some of the best heroes of the faith to study under are – John Wycliffe (1320s-1384), John Hus (1372-1415), Martin Luther (1483-1546), Huldrych Zwingli (1484-1531), William Tyndale (1494-1536), John Calvin (1509-1564), John Knox (1510-72), William Gurnall (1617-1679), John Bunyan (1628-1688), Jonathan Edwards (1703-1758), George Whitefield (1704-1770), Martyn Lloyd-Jones (1899-1981) and Miles Stanford (1914-1999).

Always keep in mind that when you answer a question from a student do not try to come up with a clever analogy. Rely on Scripture. Quote the Bible or turn to the appropriate passage and read it. Let God answer the question instead of you.

It is the Infallible, Holy Word of God that convicts people of their sins (Hebrews 4.12), produces faith in them (Romans 10.17) and gives them understanding and wisdom (James 1.5). Let God do the talking.



HOW TO CHOOSE A PASTOR

This book gives every congregation in the world all the knowledge it needs to choose the right pastor for them. It does not explain how to choose the most charismatic and dynamic pastor. Instead it shows how to choose the most dedicated man for the position who is not a hireling.

If every congregation in the world were to use the knowledge in this book to choose a pastor there would be a worldwide revival as great as the one the Apostles ignited. This book will change your church making you dynamic witnesses in your community.

To order your copy of *How to Choose a Pastor* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

STEP TWENTY-ONE

SEMINARY CURRICULUM

Most men who seek the office of pastor (1 Timothy 3.1) think it is necessary to graduate from seminary to be fully equipped. That is not true. All seminaries emphasize the study of commentaries and books by men they consider to be faithful to Scripture. This seminary course emphasizes the study of Holy Scripture and avoidance of all commentaries and books. The best way for a man to be properly equipped to be a pastor is through daily reading, study, memorization and meditation of Scripture with intense prayer. It is the Word of God that prepares a man to be an under-shepherd of Jesus, not the study of denominational doctrines, commentaries and books.

Reading program

Students are to follow the prescribed daily reading program:

Read one chapter of Proverbs and two chapters each day from the following divisions of the Bible:

1. Torah (Genesis – Deuteronomy)
2. Historical books (Joshua – Esther)
3. Poetical books (Job – Song of Solomon)
4. Major prophets (Isaiah – Ezekiel)
5. Minor prophets (Daniel – Malachi)

6. Gospels & Acts
7. Pauline Epistles (Romans – Hebrews)
8. General Epistles & Revelation (James – Revelation)

This reading program is 17 chapters per day. It may seem like it is a lot of reading, but it is necessary. Since there are 929 chapters in the Old Testament and 260 in the New Testament you will read the OT through about four times, the New Testament more than 8.4 times and Proverbs 12 times each year.

Memorization program

Students are to memorize as many of the following 511 verses as possible. Choose a translation and stick with it.

New Testament

Matthew 6.9-13; 6.19-21; 6.24; 6.33; 7.12-16a, 7.21-23; 25.46; 28.19-20 (21 verses)

Mark 8.36-37; 10.42-45 12.29-31 (9 verses)

Luke 6.26; 6.31; 12.20-21; 13.24; 19.10 (6 verses)

John 1.1-14; 3.3; 3.14-18; 3.36; 5.24; 6.37; 7.24; 8.31-32; 8.36; 10.27-30; 13.34-35; 14.1-6; 14.23; 15.1-8; 15.12-14; 15.16, 15.23; 16.8; 16.33; 17.3; 17.17; 20.31 (58 verses)

Acts 1.8; 2.42; 2.44-46; 4.12; 5.42; 6.4; 13.48 17.11 (10 verses)

Romans 1.16; 3.10-12; 3.23; 4.3; 5.8; 6.23; 8.1-2; 8.18; 8.28-29; 8.38-39; 10.9-10; 10.13; 10.17; 12.1-2; 12.19-21 (24 verses)

1 Corinthians 2.10; 2.16; 6.19-20; 10.13; 10.31; 15.1-4, 15.51-52 (12 verses)

2 Corinthians 4.3-4; 5.10; 5.17; 5.20; 6.2b; 9.7; 10.3-5;
11.13-14; 13.5 (13 verses)

Galatians 1.9; 5.13-26; 6.6; 6.9-10 (18 verses)

Ephesians 1.7; 2.8-10; 4.11-16; 4.25-27; 4.30-32; 5.18;
6.10-18 (26 verses)

Philippians 1.21; 1.29; 2.3-4; 3.20-21; 4.6; 4.8; 4.13; 4.19
(10 verses)

Colossians 3.1-2, 16 (3 verses)

1 Thessalonians 4.16-18; 5.1-6, 9, 16-19 (14 verses)

2 Thessalonians 2.1-3 (3 verses)

1 Timothy 2.9-15; 3.1-7; 6.7-14; 6.17-19 (25 verses)

2 Timothy 2.2-3; 2.15; 3.12; 3.16-17; 4.1-4 (10 verses)

Titus 1.5-9; 2.13; 3.5-6; 3.14 (9 verses)

Hebrews 1.14; 3.12-13; 4.12-15; 4.15; 5.12-14; 6.1-2; 9.27;
10.14-17, 24-25; 11.1; 11.6; 11.24-26; 13.1-2; 13.17 (28
verses)

James 1.2-5; 1.19-20; 1.22; 2.10, 17, 26; 3.1, 4.1-10; 4.14;
4.17 (23 verses)

1 Peter 1.15-16; 2.1-2; 3.15; 4.1-2; 5.1-9 (16 verses)

2 Peter 1.5-7; 1.20-21 (5 verses)

1 John 1.6-10; 2.15-17; 2.27; 3.16-18; 5.11-13; 5.20-21 (17
verses)

Revelation 3.20; 20.10-15; 21.6; 22.12-13, 17 (11 verses)

(Total verses in the NT = 371)

Old Testament

Genesis 1.1; 15.6 (2 verses)

Exodus 20.1-17 (17 verses)

Leviticus 19.2

Number 23.19

Deuteronomy 6.4-8; 8.3 (6 verses)

Joshua 1.8; 8.34-35; 22.5; 24.15 (5 verses)

Judges 21.25

1 Samuel 15.29

1 Kings 8.60-61 (2 verses)

1 Chronicles 16.23; 28.9 (2 verses)

Nehemiah 8.3

Job 1.20-22; 19.26; 23.12; 28.24; 34.21 (7 verses)

Psalms 1.1-6; 14.1; 23.1-6; 34.7; 37.1-5, 18; 42.1-2; 45.6; 51.5; 58.3; 84.12; 90.12; 96.2; 103.11-12; 111.9; 119.9-11, 99 (35 verses)

Proverbs 1.7; 2.6-7; 3.1-12; 6.16-19; 7.1-3; 8.13, 17, 32-36; 9.8-10; 10.16, 21, 23; 11.2, 30; 12.1, 15; 13.14, 20; 14.12, 29, 34; 15.3; 16.16, 18, 20, 32; 18.15; 19.8, 17; 21.3; 22.15; 23.6-7, 17; 24.1; 25.17, 26, 28; 27.2, 17; 28.9; 29.11, 18; 30.4, 8-9 (66 verses)

Ecclesiastes 3.18; 7.2-5, 20, 29; 12.13-14 (10 verses)

Isaiah 1.16-18; 3.12; 9.6; 11.1-4; 26.3-4, 19; 40.28-31; 42.1-4; 43.10-11; 44.6; 48.16; 52.13-53.12; 55.9; 61.1-2; 64.6 (40 verses)

Jeremiah 2.13; 9.23-24; 17.9-10 (5 verses)

Daniel 12.2-3 (2 verses)

Hosea 4.6; 6.3a, 6 (3 verses)

Micah 5.2

Habakkuk 2.4

Malachi 4.2-3 (2 verses)

(Total verses in the OT = 211 – Grand total 582)

Study program

Do a study of the doctrines listed below. Do not use commentaries or books. Use only Bibles, an interlinear Bible, a Strong's concordance, a word study book and Greek and Hebrew lexicons. Let the Holy Spirit teach you. If you have already done the studies on "Sin," "Judgment," "Grace and Salvation," "Hell and the Lake of Fire," "Trinity," "Rapture," "Millennial Kingdom" and "Eternal Kingdom" in Steps 18 and 19 you do not need to do them again. If you have not completed Steps 18 and 19 you must do all of the studies below.

Qualifications and duties of pastors and deacons – Do a complete study on this topic. List every qualification for a pastor and also for a deacon and explain each one. Then list the duties of the deacons. Next list the duties of a pastor and explain each one as best you can. No man should think of becoming a pastor until he has done a study of the qualifications and duties of a pastor.

Book study – Pick one book in the Bible and do a thorough study of it. The way to prepare for a teaching lesson or a sermon is to read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture as much as possible. If the book is not too large, 15 chapters or less, read through it once a day for 30 days to get acquainted

with it. If it is more than 15 chapters divide it up. Take two or more months to read and study through it.

During the month or so that you are reading through a book choose key verses to memorize and hide them in your heart. Study the meaning of key words checking the Hebrew or Greek. Find as many cross references for each verse and write them in your Bible. Pick a Bible suitable for writing notes in. Wide margin Bibles are the best. When you teach – these verses and notes will be your teaching outline. Meditate on each chapter of the book. Let the Holy Spirit teach you (1 John 2.27). Lastly write your own commentary on the book. Once you have done this you will be ready to teach on that book. You should study a few books of the Bible thoroughly and be prepared to teach/preach on them by the time you finish this course. Once you become a pastor you can teach through that book and as you are doing that you can start on the next book you decide to teach through. If you can study through several books before you become a pastor it will be beneficial. Study Step 22 to learn more about teaching and preaching.

Sin and Judgment – Explain what sin is, what it does to man, what the results of it are, if everyone is born in sin and list as many sins as possible using Scripture. Explain whether or not man will be judged when he dies, what he will be judged for and when he will be judged.

Grace and Salvation – Explain what grace is, what it does, who gives it. Explain what salvation is, how one is saved, and what he is saved from. Explain what the “Gospel” is and conclude with a clear and concise presentation of the Gospel.

Punishment of the wicked in Hell and the Lake of Fire – Explain whether or not those who die in their sins will be punished and how long. Also explain what that punishment will be in Hell (Hades) and in the Lake of Fire (Gehenna). Make sure to explain whether or not the descriptions of punishment in Hell and the Lake of Fire are literal or symbolic. Describe where Hell is located and also where the

Lake of Fire will be located. Also note whether or not the wicked in the Lake of Fire will be able to see New Jerusalem.

Trinity – Explain the doctrine of the Trinity as best you can. Make an exact and literal translation of Deuteronomy 6.4 and a paraphrase translation. Also give a full explanation of what it says. Describe the Father, Son and Holy Spirit as best you can. Make sure to explain as many of their qualities as you can and if They are equal to each other in all ways. Include the Son’s deity, virgin birth, sinless life and sacrifice, and bodily resurrection. Describe what you believe they consist of and where they dwell. Do not forget to explain whether They are bound by time or exist apart from it. Explain why the word Elohim is used in the Old Testament and should it be translated “God” or “Gods.” Lastly, explain whether or not They think and if They can change Their minds.

Spiritual Warfare – Do a complete study of this subject using every verse in the Bible that touches on it.

Rapture – Explain what the Rapture is, when it will take place, if it can take place at any moment, and if all believers will be raptured. Explain how long it will take and if there will be any warning beforehand. Make sure you explain whether there is a gap between the Rapture and the Tribulation if you believe it takes place beforehand. List each position for the timing of the Rapture and give biblical reasons why you do not believe the Rapture will not take place at the other times.

Tribulation – Explain what the Tribulation is, how long it is and if the events described in Revelation and elsewhere concerning it are literal. Describe who the Antichrist and False Prophet are and what nations each of them will come from. Do not forget to explain what the mark of the Beast is. Make sure you explain what the creatures in Revelation nine are and who made them. List the things and events in Revelation that are literal and those that are symbolic. List the passages in the Old Testament that describe the Tribulation.

Millennial Kingdom – Explain whether or not there will be a literal 1000 year reign of Jesus Christ on Earth. Give as much detail of it as you can. Explain whether babies will be born and whether or not anyone will die during it. Try to calculate how many people could be born during that time. Explain what Christians will be doing during it. Also make sure you explain how a person is saved during that dispensation. Do not forget to explain what happens at the end of that kingdom. List as many passages in the Old Testament dealing with that Kingdom.

Eternal Kingdom – Describe what the Eternal Kingdom will be like using every passage in the Bible dealing with it.

Free will versus election – Find every verse in the Bible that speaks about free will and also election. List them and then explain what each one means, in context. Then explain what you believe the Bible teaches – that everyone has free will to trust Jesus or no one has a free will to be saved and that Jesus chooses the people He wants to save and then saves them. Conclude by explaining if it is necessary to explain to the lost that they have free will or not when one shares the Gospel. If you cannot come to a decision on this doctrine explain why.

The cults (Explain the major false doctrines that the following cults teach – Mormonism, Watchtower Society, Seventh Day Adventists, Worldwide Church of God and Church of Christ. Give a solid argument why they cannot be of God and whether anyone can be saved by becoming a member of one of them. Include a brief summary of how each cult began.

Also list and explain the major false doctrines that the Roman Catholic Church teaches. Explain whether or not a person can be saved by becoming a Roman Catholic.

Recommended reading list

This is the recommended list of books each disciple can read if he does not understand a specific doctrine or topic.

The Christian in Complete Armour – Gurnall, William

Proverbs to Live By

Galatians

Ephesians

Philippians

Kolossians

Thessalonians

Letters to Timothy

Titos & Philemon

James: Bible Sense to Live By

Peter and Jude

John's Letters

Basic Training

Bearing Fruit

Bought with a Price

Crucified with Messiah

Faith Test

Famine!

Giving the Scriptural Way

Hide the Word in Your Heart

Topical Memory System

HOLY SPIRIT Gifts

Marks of a True Believer

Not By Bread Alone

Spiritual Fitness Program

Slaves for Messiah

Treasure Hunt

Well Done Good and Faithful Slave

How to Pray

How to Study the Sacred Scriptures

How to Memorize the Sacred Scripture

How to be filled with the SPIRIT

How to be Humble

How to Share Your Faith

How to Choose a Church

How to Start a Church

How to Choose a Pastor

Pastor's Handbook

Marks of a True Church

Personal training

Every man who has been called to be a pastor must have on the job training (OJT). One pastor or more should train him how to teach, preach, lead prayer meetings, disciple men, minister to believers and the unsaved, share the Gospel, rebuke and refute false teachers, overthrow philosophies of Satan and tear down the gates of Hell!

The Bible does not command pastors to send faithful men called to be pastors to Bible college or seminary. YAHWEH commands every pastor to personally train faithful men to be pastors. There should not be a single Bible college or seminary on Earth. Training pastors is the solemn duty of every pastor.

STEP TWENTY-TWO

SHEPHERDING A CHURCH

The men who have completed this discipleship program will know Scripture well enough to teach and preach the Word. They will need some guidance on shepherding a church. This step is designed to give them that guidance.

Qualifications of a Pastor

Every man who desires to be a pastor seeks a good thing (1 Timothy 3.1), yet he must meet the qualifications for the position:

1. Be above reproach (living a holy life)
2. Husband of one wife (if married)
3. Be sensible
4. Be modest
5. Be hospitable
6. Able to teach
7. Holding fast to the Word
8. Not a novice (recently saved)
9. Not greedy.
10. Not be a lover of money
11. Be sober (not a regular drinker of wine)
12. Not addicted to any kind of alcohol
13. Not quarrelsome
14. Not a brawler

15. Be gentle
16. Able to rule his own family
17. His children are obedient
18. Have a good reputation
19. Have a love for what is good
20. Be just.
21. Be devout
22. Have self-control (1Timothy 3.1-7; Titus 1.6-9)

The qualifications are strict, but necessary. If you fall short in any of them it is best to wait until the Lord has given you the grace and strength to fully meet them all. If you are married and one or more of your children are juvenile delinquents it is best that you take a position of Bible teacher in a church. If you have divorced after being saved and your wife was saved it might be best to be just a Bible teacher.

Duties of a Pastor

Once you are certain that you meet all the qualifications you need to do a thorough study of the duties of a pastor. You can read books about this, but the only way to know exactly what the duties are is to study the Bible. The primary books to study are the letters to Timothy and Titus. Other duties of pastors can also be found in Ezekiel 34.4; Acts 6, Romans 12, 1 Corinthians 12, Hebrews 13 and 1 Peter 3 and 5.

Before you become a pastor study those books and chapters to learn what your duties are. It is foolhardy to take a “job” without knowing what your duties are. Being a pastor is a “job” but it is foremost a ministry. Pastors minister to the needs of the congregation (1 Peter 5.1-3). Jesus is the Chief Shepherd over all the churches in the world (1 Peter 5.4), and pastors are under-shepherds. A pastor’s *“lips should keep knowledge, and they [congregation] should seek the law at his mouth: for he is the messenger of the LORD of hosts”* (Malachi 2.7). *“The lips of the righteous feed many”* (Proverbs 10.21). Be very careful to not feed the flock false doctrine.

The primary duties pastors are prayer and the ministry of the Word (Acts 6.4). They must not be caught up in financial matters, individual counseling of members, and organizing activities. Pastors need to choose faithful men to handle those things or let the congregation choose them. When a pastor gets involved in those matters it takes away too much time from prayer and the ministry of the Word.

Give careful consideration to getting 501C3 status. If you do you will be under the authority of the government which can limit what you say from the pulpit. You will also need a board. If you have a board make sure it is set up by the deacons and that it has authority over the church property. A board can never have authority over the pastors. If a church has just one pastor and he violates his office he must be disciplined by the pastors of a sister church. The sheep are not qualified to discipline a pastor. If the church has three or more pastors, as all churches should have, the other pastors should deal with him.

Making Pastors

Once you are a pastor train at least two other faithful men to be associate pastors with you. Every church needs a minimum of three pastors who have equal authority. When spiritual decisions must be made the three pastors are to vote. Obviously the vote will be unanimous, or two will be yeas and one nay, or two nays and one yea. A church must always have an odd number of pastors who vote on a spiritual decision so there will never be a stalemate. As more pastors are added to the staff they must be added in even numbers. If a church cannot pay the other pastors a salary they are to serve without pay.

A church must always have an odd number of pastors. Deacons or men in the church cannot have a vote on spiritual matters. Deacons and other men in the church can only vote on non-spiritual matters. Pastors should refrain from voting on non-spiritual matters. They need not be distracted by non-

spiritual matters in the church. It also gives the deacons and others responsibility which is necessary in the spiritual growth of a congregation. Pastors should not attend church business meetings. The deacons can handle that.

Ministries of the Church

Below are some ministries that pastors may wish to consider:

1. Home/church Bible studies.
2. Home/church prayer meetings and daily prayer at lunch time.
3. Saturday night Bible study for youth and adults.
4. Personalized home Bible studies. (A teacher holds a personal Bible study for a single person, couple, family or a small group.)
5. Sunday school classes teaching book-by-book.
6. Class to teach fathers how to conduct family devotions.
7. Discipleship program.
8. Memorization club.
9. Bible reading club. (Read a book of the Bible and discuss it.)
10. Weekly Bible study for all pastors, deacons and Bible teachers.
11. New member's class on basic Bible doctrines.
12. A class on health and diet.
13. Class for members to determine what their spiritual gifts are.
14. Bible study correspondence course.
15. A Bible college for members and others. (It does not need to be accredited. The pastors and qualified Bible teachers teach classes on specific books of the Bible, O.T. and N.T. survey, Bible doctrine, hermeneutics, homiletics, Church history, etc.)
16. Evangelism class. (Training members how to share the Gospel.)
17. Evangelism programs.

18. Community outreach programs.
19. Send out missionaries and support those in the field.
20. Compassion ministry for members and all (Appen. E).
21. Food bank. (For church members and the poor.)
22. Day-care ministry for members.
23. Homeschooling program for parents to home school their children.
24. Regular dinner parties. (Pastors, deacons and Bible teachers invite members of the church to their home for dinner/fellowship. The host should take time to share his testimony and listen to the testimonies of his guests. He should get to know them, and ask them if they need help in their spiritual growth or in their daily lives.)
25. Night of preaching. (Men called to be pastors preach for 20 minutes. Three or more men preach. It can be a powerful evangelistic tool.)

Most pastors want to be successful. They want to have a big church with several ministries to help the members of their congregation. Some even want to have a radio or television ministry. There is nothing wrong with this, yet that is not success. Spiritual success does **not** consist of numbers, money, buildings, ministries, fame and notoriety. Most pastors who have those things are spiritual failures.

Spiritual success consists of:

1. Making certain that every member of the congregation is truly born from above. If you cannot spend time with every member of the Lord's flock to listen to their testimony and be assured they are saved you need to train men to help you (Hebrews 13.17).
2. Feeding every member of the flock with the Word and helping them grow to spiritual maturity (Acts 6.4; Ephesians 4.11-16; 1 Peter 5.2).
3. Setting up a Spiritual Fitness Program for every member and helping them stay on it (Appendix B).

4. Getting every member involved in ministry. Determine what gifts each member has and find a way for them to use them. The more members there are involved in ministry the greater impact the church will have on the community (Romans 12.7-8; 1 Corinthians 12.7-10).
5. Putting every member of the flock to spiritual work exercising their spiritual gifts (Romans 12.7-8; 1 Corinthians 12.7-10).
6. Watching over the flock. When a member or regular attendee does not attend a Sunday morning service call and tell him that you missed him. Gently determine why he skipped and make him understand he is an important member. Explain to him that the whole body suffers when just one member is missing. Train men to help you if you have a large church. When the member is a woman have your wife or a female member of your congregation make the call (Hebrews 13.17).
7. Discipling all husbands so they can disciple their wives and children (Deuteronomy 6.6-7).
8. Discipling faithful men called to be pastors (2 Timothy 2.2).
9. Having your wife or spiritually mature women in your congregation disciple mothers so they can disciple their children (Proverbs 1.8; 6.20; 31.26).
10. Showing hospitality to every member of the congregation by inviting them to dinner on a regular basis (once a week or once a month). The deacons, Bible teachers and other men in the church can help you (Romans 12.13; 1 Timothy 3.2; Titus 1.8) as well as all members (1 Timothy 5.10; Hebrews 13.2; 1 Peter 4.9).

11. Meeting the physical needs of every member of the Lord's flock (Acts 6.1-3; Romans 12.7; 1 John 3.16-18).
12. Taking the Gospel to every home and person in your city, and discipling those who believe in Jesus Christ (Matthew 28.19-20).
13. Sending out missionaries to make disciples of all nations (Matthew 28.19-20), and assisting missionaries in their work (3 John 5-8).

Sometimes a pastor may be hesitant to let a member exercise his gift. When a pastor does not let members use their gifts he is grieving the Holy Spirit. If a man has the gift of teaching give him a trial opportunity explaining that he will only become a permanent teacher when you determine if he has the gift of teaching, and that it is the will of the Lord for him to teach. Watch what he says to make sure his doctrine is correct and determine if he has the gift. If you and the members of the church conclude he does not have the gift tell him. Then find out what his gifts are. Let everyone use their gifts so you and the congregation can see what gifts they have (1 Peter 4.10). Making up rules that a member cannot teach or exercise other gifts until he has sat on the bench for 90 days, six months or a year is not scriptural and it hinders the work of the Lord. Put every member to work serving the Lord as quickly as possible.

Snares of the devil to avoid

And he must have a good reputation with those outside the church, so that he will not fall into reproach and the snare of the devil. (1 Timothy 3.7)

There are numerous snares of the devil that pastors must avoid. The major ones will be touched on briefly.

Love of money

One of the biggest snares that too many pastors are caught in is the love of money. When a pastor of a small church sees growth in numbers and money it is extremely hard to remain humble and live at the same standard of living. Most pastors who see growth take a bigger salary, buy a bigger house, buy extra vehicles, buy expensive clothing and jewelry for themselves and their wives, buy toys, pad their bank account, buy stock, make risky investments and spend, spend, spend.

Instead of acting as if they had won the lottery a pastor who sees growth should use the extra money to support as many missionaries as possible. Next he should make sure the poor members have their needs met (Acts 4.34). Then he should see to it that every poor person in his community has their needs met. The church can help sister churches in the community and nearby communities meet the needs of their poor members. If he still has an excess of money he can put solid Bible teachers on staff to teach the congregation the Bible, book-by-book. They would also take members through a discipleship program. The pastor would train these Bible teachers to be pastors. If the Lord kept blessing the church the pastors would then start other churches and continue doing this until the Rapture. There is never an excuse for a pastor who sees an increase in church revenue to spend it on himself.

As a church grows none of the pastors should be increasing their salaries and their standard of living. That is not why a true man of God becomes a pastor. If he is making the average income of his community why should he increase his salary? If he is responsible for the growth he could argue he deserves more money, but God says He is the one who adds to a church as He sees fit (Acts 2.47). Pastors who start asking for more money when the church grows are hirelings, they are not true men of God (1 Peter 5.2).

Instead of pastors trying to raise their standard of living they should see how they can lower it. Instead of eating out more they should eat in. Instead of going on expensive vacations they should go on cheap vacations. Instead of

buying new suits and clothing they should buy what they need from thrift shops. Instead of buying expensive watches and jewelry they should buy an inexpensive watch and forget about jewelry. Instead of buying a new car they should buy a used car from a rich church member at a discounted price.

Any pastor who does not live a humble and spendthrift life is not a true pastor. He is a mock pastor, a fake pastor, a phony pastor. He is a hireling that Jesus Christ warned us about:

“Beware of the false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves. You will know them by their fruits. (Matthew 7.15-16a)

The fruits that we judge pastors by are their lifestyle. We look at how much money they spend, what their hobbies and interests are and where they go. If they spend as much money as they can and have numerous worldly hobbies and interests and take numerous vacations to exotic locations they are wolves in sheep’s clothing.

The other fruits we judge are their teaching and service to the church. If a pastor does the following he is a hireling:

1. Give feel-good sermons and rarely teach Scripture book-by-book.
2. Rarely or never take members out to share the Gospel with the lost.
3. Rarely or never hold prayer meetings or Bible studies in their home.
4. Rarely or never minister to the needs of the congregation.
5. Rarely or never invite members to their home for dinner and fellowship.
6. Rarely or never take infirm members shopping for groceries.
7. Rarely or never do yard work for the infirm.
8. Rarely or never invite members to go with them on vacation.
9. Rarely or never drives people around who do not have a vehicle or cannot drive.

These are just a few things to judge a pastor by to know if he is a true pastor or just a hireling. You may think that no pastor does these things in the 21st century because things have changed. Maybe it is time to change them back to the way God wants them to be. The first Christians met in homes each day of the week for prayer, Bible study and fellowship (Acts 2.42, 46; 5.42). The pastors were part of this practice and all pastors today should imitate the first pastors.

Virtually all pastors teach that if a Christian gives to the Lord through a church the Lord will bless him. They say, “You can’t out give God.” Is this true of a church? If God blesses a church with more money than it needs to pay all of its obligations should not the church give that excess money to the poor and missionaries? If they do will God bless them with even more money that they can use to help more poor people and support more missionaries?

If pastors and elder boards did what all pastors preach – give and the Lord will give you back more – there would be NO poor believers in the world and there would be so many missionaries throughout the world that the whole world would soon be won for the Lord!

If money was taken out of ministry the world would be won for the Lord in less than a year. If every pastor, evangelist, televangelist, ministry CEO, religious author and everyone working in the religious field were given a salary of NOT more than the median income of the country or state they live in there would be a revival overnight greater than the Protestant Reformation and the First and Second Great Awakenings combined! Those who make more than the median income through writing books, selling DVDs, CDs or anything else should give ten percent to his church or ministry and the remainder to other ministries, churches or the poor. If all full-time workers in the religious field did this they would all spend more time in prayer, Bible study, Bible teaching, preaching and evangelism and less time playing around in the world and living like the wicked.

Fame and power

Another snare of the devil that many pastors fall into is fame and power. When a church grows the pastor usually gets attention. He attains fame and becomes a celebrity. This celebrity status can grow if he gets on the radio and television or writes a book that becomes a best seller. With fame comes power and influence.

Most pastors and most people do not know how to handle fame. They let it go to their head and become proud. They believe the lie of the devil that they are better than others and should be treated as a celebrity. They forget that in the spiritual world the greater one becomes the humbler he will be. Instead of seeking to be treated like a celebrity a true spiritual man of God treats those around him as if they are special and more important than himself (Philippians 2.3-4).

Those who are great in the spiritual realm are servants of those beneath them (Mark 10.42-43). When a pastor or anyone gains fame the best way to handle it is to be a servant. Instead of seeking to be served he should serve others. Deny yourself and go out of your way to help those around you beginning with your family. Pastors who seek to be served and not serve others think they are greater than Jesus Christ:

“For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many.” (Mark 10.45)

Many celebrity pastors seek to influence those around them more than they did before they became famous. They try to get people to serve them. Some try to flex their celebrity muscles in the political and secular worlds. A few start a political movement and try to save the nation. Others become active in charity works around the world and become international celebrities. This usually ends in a ruined marriage with one's children hating their neglectful father.

God does not need celebrities and movers and shakers in the spiritual world. He is the one and only celebrity and He is

the only mover and shaker. He does not need you or anyone. He can raise up anyone He chooses to get a job done. Everyone is expendable.

Sex

Sex scandals have destroyed or severely hindered the ministry of many pastors. There is no woman on Earth who is worth more than serving God faithfully. Any pastor who thinks there is such a woman must step down from the pulpit.

History is littered with men who destroyed their reputation and or ministry by committing adultery or engaging in homosexual acts. Some of the more infamous examples are: Jim Bakker, Paul Barnes, Joe Barron, Todd Bentley, G. Michael Cocoris, Paul Crouch, Douglas Goodman, Ted Haggard, Benny Hinn, Jack Hyles, Marcus Lamb, Eddie Long, Albert Odulele, Earl Paulk, John Paulk, Michael Reid, George Alan Rekers and Jimmy Swaggart.

Flee all situations that can lead to adultery. No married pastor should ever be alone with a woman other than his wife, mother or sister. Pastors who counsel women are opening the door to infidelity and those who have women on staff should make sure they are never alone with them. Even if you believe you would never be tempted to commit adultery you can be unjustly accused of such as Joseph was.

Teaching and preaching

The way a pastor prepares to teach a Bible lesson or preach a sermon is not by writing a sermon outline or getting one from the Internet. Only young pastors should write a teaching/sermon outline. Most pastors have been writing sermon outlines for the last century, but that is not how God wants his ministers to prepare for a sermon.

Jesus never wrote a sermon outline. Neither did Peter, Paul, John or any of the Apostles. They taught and preached

sermons based on their intimate knowledge of Scripture. They knew Scriptures so well they could teach on any book or subject without preparation. Jesus, the Apostles and pastors of the first century did not have a New Testament. Some had a few of the books of the New Testament, but none of them had all of the books. They taught mainly from the Old Testament and from the few books of the New Testament that they had. They also taught from oral tradition of what Jesus and the Apostles taught.

Consider this question: Who would you rather have as your personal teacher – fallible men who make many mistakes in doctrine and their understanding of Scripture or the infallible God who wrote the Bible and who knows it inside and out and never makes a mistake?

Do not rely on commentaries. Instead of being taught by fallible men let God teach you as He promised He would (1 John 2.27).

The two greatest pastors of the Reformation were Martin Luther and John Calvin. They relied solely on Scripture and the teaching of the Holy Spirit (1 John 2.27) when they prepared for a sermon. The only commentaries they had were written by Roman Catholic priests who were not born from above. It is doubtful they relied on them. They did not have any sermon outlines they could borrow. They were the greatest of the Reformers because of this. If you want to be a great pastor follow their example.

The way every pastor should prepare for a lesson or sermon is to read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture as much as possible. Choose a book of the Bible and teach through it, and then teach through another book until you finish teaching through the entire Bible. Once you have taught through the Bible start over again. You can teach through the Bible in any order you desire, but teach through every book. Do not teach through the Song of Solomon if children are in the congregation. Only teach through that book in an adult Bible class.

The way to know a book inside and out is to read, read and read. If the book is not too large (15 chapters or less) read

through it once a day for 30 days to get acquainted with it. If it is more than 15 chapters split it in half and take two or more months to read and study through it. As you read take notes of things the Holy Spirit gives you and meditate on Scripture as much as possible. Let the Holy Spirit teach you (1 John 2.27).

During the month that you are reading through a book choose key verses to memorize. Study the meaning of key words checking the Hebrew or Greek. Find as many cross references for each verse and write them in your Bible. Pick a Bible suitable for writing notes in. When you teach – these verses and notes will be your teaching outline. A loose leaf Bible is excellent for teaching from because you can insert pages with extra notes and references in it. Meditate on each chapter of the book. Let the Holy Spirit teach you (1 John 2.27). Lastly write your own commentary on the book.

Once you have followed the recommendations noted above you will be ready to teach on that book. Do not write out teaching or sermon outlines. You can begin with an historical background and then start teaching through the book. Read a certain number of verses that make up a thought. In the book of James, Chapter One, you would teach on verses 1-4, then 5-8, then 9-11, then 12-18, and then 19-27. After reading a specific passage explain what it means. Next note what doctrine and truths are in the passage, and how one can apply the truths to his life. Use as many cross references as you can.

Do as much teaching from the pulpit as possible. Keep your preaching to a minimum. Remember, a sermon is just a pep talk. You do not want to give pep talks every Sunday and Wednesday. You should teach from the pulpit and only give one sermon (pep talk) once a month at the most. Teach Sunday and Wednesday nights.

Teach your flock the Bible. Give them homework and engage them in dialog. Do not stand behind the pulpit all the time. Get in the aisles and ask people questions. Do not give a lecture like most professors do in universities and seminaries. After you finish teaching on a passage ask questions. Ask the congregation if they understood what you taught. Sometimes you will want to ask a specific person a question and other

times ask a question for anyone to answer. Try to get as many people involved in answering questions as possible.

Pastors who have large congregations can still walk the aisles and ask questions. You will not be able to get everyone involved, but you can get many of them involved.

It is the Word of God that convicts people “*concerning sin, and righteousness and judgment*” (John 16.8). The Word cuts to the heart. and the Holy Spirit teaches people as they hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture. Let the Word of God and the Holy Spirit do Their job. Do as little teaching as possible and read as much Scripture as possible:

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart. (Hebrews 4.12)

As for you, the anointing which you received from Him abides in you, and you have no need for anyone to teach you; but as His anointing teaches you about all things, and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, you abide in Him. (1 John 2.27)

Sample Sermon

Hunger & Thirst for the Word

This is an idea that all pastors should consider doing at least once. Tell your flock that every believer should have a daily hunger and thirst for God. Quote/read: Job 23.12; Deuteronomy 8.3; Psalm 42.1-2; 63.1; 143.6; 2 Peter 2.2.

Explain that hungering and thirsting for God means one desires to know Him and have fellowship with Him. The way we do that is by spiritually feeding on and drinking in His Word – the Bible. The first way of drinking in His Word is by hearing Scripture. Simply read the passages concerning hearing Scripture and then move on to verses on reading

Scripture, Bible study, memorization and meditation. Next read the passages dealing with holiness and obedience, and finally the passages concerning knowing our God and Savior. After you finish reading the last verse, close in prayer.

Do not explain the Scriptures. Let the Holy Spirit do that. You may want to print out the eight topics and the passages, and put it in the bulletin as an insert for members to study during the week.

Prayer is something that we must do while we hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on the Word. We should pray for wisdom and understanding as well as our daily needs and the needs of others (Matthew 7.7-11; Luke 18.1-8; John 16.24; Ephesians 6.18; James 1.5; 1 Thessalonians 5.17).

Listening to Scripture (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; Proverbs 8.34; Luke 8.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Revelation 1.3).

Reading Scripture (Deuteronomy 17.19; Psalm 42.1-2; 63.1; 143.6; Revelation 1.3).

Studying Scripture (Deut. 8.3; Matthew 4.4; Proverbs 2.1-5; 8.34; 22.17; John 5.39; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15; 3.15).

Memorizing Scripture (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Romans 10.8; Colossians 3.16).

Meditating on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; 1 Timothy 4.15).

Holiness & obedience are two reasons we study the Bible (John 15.3; 17.17; Romans 12.1-2; Ephesians 5.26; 6.14, 17; 2 Timothy 3.16-17; Titus 3.5 & Joshua 1.8; 1 John 2.3-4).

Knowing our God and Savior is another reason to study the Bible (Jeremiah 9.24; Hosea 6.3; John 17.3; Philippians 3.10; Colossians 1.10; 2 Timothy 1.12; 1 John 2.3).

Following service (one week later)

Open in prayer and then ask:

1. Who listened to Scripture – sermons or teaching lessons last week?
2. Who read the Bible every day during the last week?
3. Who studied the Bible during the last week?
4. Who memorized Scripture during the last week?
5. Who meditated on Scripture last week?
6. Who spent time in prayer each day apart from blessing your food?

Say to the congregation, “Those who answered no to any of these questions ask yourselves why you are neglecting Scripture. Those who answered no to most or all of them are probably backslidden or you may not be saved. Come forward and get saved or rededicate your life to God.”

Give the invitation. You may want to preach a sermon after you give the invitation. It would be good to give a sermon on the importance of the daily intake of the Word. You can use the following analogies in your follow-up sermon.

Explain that most people eat three meals a day plus snacks. Then ask the congregation, “Do you feed on Scripture three times a day? Why not? Should we feed our souls as much or more than we feed our bodies? Which is more important to you – your eternal soul or your mortal body?”

Also bring up the topic of feeding our minds. Ask, “Do you spend more time watching secular movies and television than you do studying the Bible?”

Another excellent analogy is that of a husband and wife. Explain that when a husband and wife are separated for a prolonged period of time they communicate by letters, email

and phone calls. In the old days when soldiers went off to war they were eager to get letters from home and their families were eager to get letters from them. They would read them over and over and keep them with them at all times.

Then ask, “Should you have the same eagerness to read the letters that our Savior wrote to us, the Bible, that we have to read our emails and text messages or talking on the phone? Do you spend more time each day reading the Bible or reading emails and text messages or talking on the phone?”

Also explain that they should read the entire Bible not just the New Testament. Explain the events recorded in the Old Testament were written for our benefit (1 Corinthians 10.6).

Invitation to action

This is an invitation that every pastor should make to the congregation. Ask for a show of hands for the following questions:

1. Who wants to get on a Bible reading and memory program?
2. Who would be willing to dedicate themselves to reading four chapters in the Bible every day?
3. Who would be willing to memorize one verse a week?
4. Who would be willing to stay on this program for one year?

Ask those who responded to fill out a card and drop it in the offering plate. Explain to them that a pastor, deacon or someone else will contact them and help them get started and stay with them throughout the program. Assign men to men, women to women and couples to couples. Encourage people to continue in the program every year.

Helping every member of the congregation set up a spiritual fitness program is the primary duty of a pastor. You do not feed the flock by preaching or teaching one or two sermons each week.

The Worship Service

Every pastor has his own idea of what a worship service should consist of. Some ideas are good and others are bad. Consider the following activities for a worship service:

Praying – It is always good to open in prayer and to have two or more men pray during the service. The pastors should try to have as many men in the congregation pray as possible by asking different men to pray each service. He should instruct them on how to pray in public – make it short and to the point, do not preach a mini-sermon in the prayer and do not remind God or teach Him Bible or secular history.

Singing – Every worship service should include singing songs of praise to God and Jesus Christ (Judges 5.3; 2 Samuel 22.50; Psalm 7.17; 9.2; 147.1, 7; 149.1, 3; Isaiah 12.5; Romans 15.9; Ephesians 5.19). Musical instruments can be used (Psalm 150.4; Isaiah 38.20; Habakkuk 3.19), if the musicians are not the center of attention.

Reading Scripture – One or more men should read Scripture chosen by the pastors (1 Corinthians 14.26). It is best that the pastors do not read Scripture, but let different men in the congregation read each service. The more men the pastors can get involved in the service the better it will be.

Sharing testimonies of praise – The pastors can either choose members to give testimonies of praise or allow anyone to share. Do not allow a member to ramble on endlessly. Tell them to keep it short and concise. If someone wants to share every service and appears as if they are trying to get attention you will need to speak with them privately.

Sharing testimonies of what one has learned from Scripture – The pastors can either choose members to share what they learned from the Bible during the last week or allow anyone to share (Psalm 40.9-10; 1 Corinthians 14.26). Do not

let the same person share every service. Encourage everyone to share. Get everyone involved.

Sharing personal testimonies – In most churches only a few people know something about most members. A way of helping members get to know each other is through sharing their personal testimony. Each service the pastors should invite a few members to share their testimony and a little bit about themselves. Two couples could give their testimony or a family or a few single men and women. Over the course of a year or more, depending on the size of the congregation, everyone can learn a little bit about the other members. It is a great way to break the ice among members. It is also good to have members get experience sharing their personal testimony of coming to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ. Pastors, make sure the members you invite to share their testimony before the congregation, share it with you first. You must make certain they have a solid testimony. If they do not they just may not be saved and you can lead them to the Lord.

Teaching the Word of God – Pastors should teach Scripture book-by-book. After teaching a portion ask specific questions to see if the congregation understands it. Give them homework to do during the week on the passage of Scripture you intend to teach next week. Below is a sample homework assignment (answers included). Do not give the congregation the answers until after you teach on it. Print the questions without answers at – www.makedisciplesofallthenations.com

Get all the pastors involved in teaching on Sunday morning/evening and Wednesday evening. Rotate teaching assignments. No one pastor should teach every service.

James One

(Study & discussion questions)

1. What is a bond-servant? (v. 1)
A servant who decides to remain a servant for life.

2. Who did James write his letter to? (v. 1)
The 12 Hebrew tribes.
3. What are we to do when we encounter trials? (v. 2)
Consider it all joy.
4. What should the testing of our faith produce? (v. 3)
Endurance.
5. What should testing of our faith do for us? (v. 4)
A. Perfect us. B. Complete us. C. Lack nothing.
6. What should we not lack? (v. 5-7) Wisdom.
 - A. If we lack this what should we do? Ask God for wisdom.
 - B. What else can we do to get this? (Proverbs 1.1-7; 2.1-10; 4.7; 5.1-2; 7.1-4; 8.13)
 1. Increase in learning
 2. Acquire wise counsel
 3. Respect God
 4. Treasure Scripture
 5. Search for it
 6. Acquire wisdom
 7. Keep the commandments
 8. Hate evil.
 - C. Does God give this to all men and in what manner?
Yes, and He gives it generously and without reproach
 - D. When we ask for this what must we not do and why?
Not doubt for if we do we will not get it.
 - E. What kind of a person will we be if we do not ask in faith? A double-minded person who is unstable in all our ways.
7. What should the brother of humble circumstances do? (v. 9) Glory in his high position.

8. What should the rich brother do and why? (v. 10-11)
Glory in his humiliation because most are spiritual paupers.
9. Which brother is given the greater blessing by God, and which brother will have more rewards in Heaven? (v. 9-10) The poor brother.
10. What should we do when we encounter trials? (v. 12)
Persevere.
 - A. What will we receive if we are approved? Crown of life.
 - B. Is there something else we must do to receive the reward? Love Jesus.
 - C. If we are not approved will we still receive the reward? Probably not.
11. Does God tempt people or does He test people? (v. 13-15) (2 Samuel 24.1; 1 Chronicle 21.1) God never tempts people, but He frequently tests them.
 - A. What is the difference between temptation and testing?
 1. Temptation is – Enticing someone to sin.
 2. Testing is – Showing observers how strong a person’s faith, love, loyalty and obedience is.
 - B. Can God be tempted by evil? No! It is impossible for God to be tempted by evil!
 - C. Could Jesus have been tempted by evil during His incarnation? (Luke 4.1-13) No! The temptation by the devil was permitted to prove to the devil, the fallen angels, the holy angels and all mankind that Jesus is fully divine and fully God in Adamic flesh.
 - D. What causes a person to be tempted? (v. 14) Lust.
 - E. What are the results of giving in to temptation? (v. 15) 1. Sin and death.
 - F. Can the natural results of succumbing to temptation be stopped, and if so how? Yes, if one stops sinning,

receives medical attention, takes care of his body or the Lord heals him.

12. What must we guard against? (v. 16) Deception.
 - A. Who is the father of the thing we must guard against? (Genesis 3.1-7; John 8.44; Revelation 12.9; 20.3, 8, 10) The devil.
 - B. How do we guard against this? (Ephesians 6.10-18)
By putting on the full armor of God which is:
 1. Truth
 2. Righteousness
 3. Faith
 4. Gospel
 5. Salvation
 6. Word of God
 7. Prayer

13. Where does every good thing and perfect gift come from? (v. 17) From above (Heaven), from the Father of lights.
 - A. Who receives these good things and gifts? People.
 - B. What is no “variation” and no “shifting shadow”?
 1. No variation – The blessings are the same for everyone.
 2. No shifting shadow – The blessings do not go from good to bad.

14. Who brought whom forth? (v. 18) The Father brought forth the saints (believers).
 - A. By what was this done? The Word of Truth (Scripture).
 - B. What is a first fruit? (Exodus 23.16) The first crop of a harvest.
 1. Who is the First Fruit? (1 Corinthians 15.20, 23) Jesus.
 2. Who was among the first fruits? (Matthew 27.51-53) An unspecified number of Old Testament believers.

15. What must every believer be? (v. 19)
- A. Quick to hear.
 - B. Slow to speak.
 - C. Slow to anger.
16. What can the anger of man never achieve? (v. 20) The righteousness of God.
- A. What must never go down on our anger? (Ephesians 4.26) The sun.
 - B. Can we exhibit righteous anger? (Ephesians 4.26) Yes, but we must be careful not to sin.
17. What must all believers do? (v. 21)
- A. Put away all filthiness and wickedness (sin)
 - B. Receive the Word (Scripture).
18. What can save our souls? (v. 21) Scripture.
- A. How is a person saved? (Ephesians 2.8) By the grace of God through faith alone in Jesus.
 - B. By what does faith come? (Romans 10.17) By hearing the Word (Scripture).
19. What must all believers do? (v. 22) Be doers of the Word and not just hearers.
- A. Give a few examples of what we should do?
 1. Love God with all our heart, soul, mind, and strength (Deuteronomy 6.5; Mark 12.30).
 2. Love your neighbor as yourself (Leviticus 19.18; Mark 12.31).
 3. Draw near to God (James 4.8).
 4. Keep the commandments in Scripture (1 John 5.2-3).
 5. Cleanse your hands and purify your hearts (James 4.8).
 6. Pray for all kinds of people (1 Timothy 2.1).
 7. Share material goods with those in need (1 John 3.17-18).

8. Be hospitable (Romans 12.13; Hebrews 13.1-2; 1 Peter 4.9).
9. Serve each other (Galatians 5.13; 1 Peter 4.10).
10. Visit orphans & widows (James 1.27).
11. Humble yourselves (1 Peter 5.6).
12. Resist the devil (James 4.7; 1 Peter 5.9).
13. Love your enemies (Matthew 5.44).
14. Give to the Lord in secret (Matthew 6.1-4).
15. Do not love the world or the things in the world (1 John 2.15).
16. Do not oppress employees, widows, orphans and aliens (Malachi 3.5).
17. Seek good and not evil, hate evil and love good, and establish justice (Amos 5.14-15; Prov. 8.13).
18. Do not charge high rent to the poor (Amos 5.11).
19. Do not reject knowledge (Hosea 4.6).
20. Do not have idols in your life (1 John 5.21).

B. How do some believers delude themselves?

1. By going to church and doing little else.
2. By saying a quick prayer before dinner, and a quick prayer before sleeping and little else.
3. By giving some money or even tithing and little else.
4. By watching your favorite religious TV show.
5. By helping a brother or sister in the Lord once in a great while and little else.

C. Should we periodically examine our faith? (2 Cor. 13.5) Yes, all Christians should examine their faith.

1. How do we examine our faith? By studying the Bible to see what it says we should do. If we are not doing those things we failed the test.

20. What one word best describes a hearer of the Word who does not obey it? (vs. 23-24) Hypocrite.

21. What is the Perfect Law – the Law of Liberty? (v. 25) (James 2.12; John 8.32; Galatians 2.4; 6.2; 1 Peter 2.16)

Love God with all your heart, soul, mind and body and love your neighbor as yourself. (Mark 12.30-31).

22. What must all believers do with the Law of Liberty and what must we not do with it? (v. 25)
 - A. Look at it (Study it).
 - B. Obey it.
 - C. Not be forgetful hearers.

23. What will be the result if we do what we should do and not do something? (v. 25) (Psalm 1.1-3) We will be blessed in what we do.

24. What must we all do if we claim to be religious? (v. 26)
Control your speech.
 - A. If we do not do this what will be the result?
 1. We will deceive ourselves.
 2. Our religion (faith) will be worth nothing

25. What is pure and undefiled religion? (v. 27)
 - A. Visiting and caring for orphans and widows.
 - B. Keeping oneself pure from the world.

TEACHING OUTLINE

I. Introduction

- A. Every true believer in Jesus Christ is a disciple of His (Isaiah 8.16; Acts 9.1, 10, 19, 25-26, 36, 38; 11.26, 29; 13.52; 14.20, 22, 28; 15.10; 16.1; 18.23, 27; 19.1, 9, 30; 20.1, 7, 30; 21.4, 16).
- B. All believers should become teachers of the Bible (Hebrews 5.12).
- C. All believers are commanded to make disciples (Matthew 28.19-20).
- D. All fathers are commanded to disciple their children (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; 6.6-7; 11.18-19; 32.46-47).
- E. Before one can make a disciple he must be discipled (2 Timothy 2.2).

II. Sin and Judgment

- A. The need for salvation.
 - 1. Everyone is a sinner.
 - a. Everyone is conceived and born in sin (Psalm 51.5).
 - b. Everyone goes astray from birth (Psalm 58.3).
 - c. No one is righteous and no one seeks God (Psalm 14.1-3; 53.1-3; 143.2; Ecclesiastes 3.18; Isaiah 53.6; 64.6; Romans 3.10-12, 23).
 - 2. Everyone will die because of sin.
 - a. The result of sin is physical death (Proverbs 12.15; 14.12; 16.25; Romans 6.23).
 - b. The result of sin is spiritual death (Ephesians 2.1, 5; Colossians 2.13).

3. Everyone will be judged for every sin (Psalm 62.12; Proverbs 24.12; Jeremiah 17.10; 32.19; Matthew 12.36; 16.27; Luke 8.17; Romans 2.6, 16; 1 Peter 1.17; Revelation 2.23; 20.12).

B. Punishment of sin.

1. Everyone who dies in their sins goes to Hell (Luke 16.19-31).
2. Everyone who dies in their sins will be judged at the Great White Throne Judgment for each sin, be found guilty and given a corresponding degree of punishment (Matthew 11.22; Mark 6.11; Luke 12.46-48; 20.47).
3. Everyone who dies in their sins will be cast into the Lake of Fire (Revelation 20.11-15).
4. Punishment will be eternal – it will never end (Matthew 25.41, 46; Revelation 14.11; 20.10).
5. The descriptions of Hell and the Lake of Fire are literal (Psalm 11.6; 140.10; Proverbs 25.22; Luke 16.19-31; Romans 12.20; Rev 14.9-11; 20.10; 21.8).
6. The location of Hell (Psalm 63.9; Isaiah 44.23; Ezekiel 26.20; Matthew 12.40).
7. The location of the Lake of Fire (Matthew 8.12; 22.13; 25.30; 2 Peter 2.17; Jude 13; Rev. 14.10).

III. Salvation

A. The act of conversion.

1. How to be saved (Luke 18.13; 23.42; Acts 16.30-31; Romans 10.9-11, 13).
2. What it means to believe, trust, have faith in and receive Jesus Christ (John. 3.16; 5.24; 20.31; Romans 4.5; John 1.12).
3. The Gospel (1 Corinthians 15.3-5).
 - a. Jesus died for our sins according to the Scriptures (Isaiah 53.4-6, 8, 10-12).

- b. He was buried according to the Scriptures (Isaiah 53.9).
 - c. He rose from the dead according to the Scriptures (Isaiah 53.10, 12; Matthew 17.22-23; 20.18-19; Mark 8.31; Luke 9.22; 18.32-33; 22.37; John 2.19 and Isaiah 63.1-6; 66.15-16; Habakkuk 3.3-15).
- B. There is only one way to be saved.
 - 1. Salvation by grace through faith in Jesus Christ and in Him alone (Ephesians 2.8).
 - 2. There is salvation in no one else .
 - a. There is no salvation in other religions (John 14.6; 15.23; Acts 4.12).
 - b. Some who die young are saved (2 Samuel 12.23).
 - c. Some who never hear the Gospel are saved (Isaiah 52.10; Romans 1.18-23).
 - 3. We cannot add to the work of Jesus (Romans 4.1-8; Ephesians 2.9; Titus 3.5).
 - 4. No one gets a second chance after death to be saved (Hebrews 9.27).
- C. The results of conversion.
 - 1. There will be noticeable changes in your life (Romans 6.4; 2 Corinthians 5.17; Colossians 3.10).
 - a. There will be a desire to know Jesus (Jeremiah 9.24; Ephesians 3.14-19; Colossians 1.10).
 - b. There will be a desire to fellowship with the Brethren (Micah 3.16; Acts 2.46-47; Hebrews 10.24-25).
 - c. There will be a desire to share Jesus with the lost (Psalm 26.7; 119.72; Jeremiah 20.9; Daniel 4.2; Matthew 9.31; Acts 2.4; 4.13-20; 26.22-24; 5.27-32; 2 Corinthians 4.13; 1 Peter 3.15).
 - d. There will be obedience to Jesus (1 Samuel 15.22; Matthew 7.24; 12.50; John 15.10; Acts 5.29; Ephesians 4.24; James.1.25).
 - e. There will be an abandonment of the life of sin (Psalm 34.13-14; Isaiah 1.16; John 8.11;

- Romans 6.11-12; 1 Corinthians 15.34; 2 Corinthians 5.15; Galatians 5.24; Ephesians 4.22; 2 Timothy 2.19, 22; Titus 2.12; Hebrews 12.1; James 4.4; 1 Peter 1.14; 2.11; 3.11; 4.1-4)
2. No noticeable change means there was no conversion.
 - a. Reciting a salvation prayer does not save you
 - b. Many can think they are saved when they are not (Matthew 7.21-23; Luke 13.24; 2 Corinthians 13.5).
- D. Eternal life.
1. Everyone who believes in Jesus is promised eternal life (John 3.16; 5.24; 10.28-29; Romans 6.23; 1 John 5.11-13).
 2. A true believer cannot lose, forfeit, give up or walk away from his salvation (John 3.16; 5.24; 6.37-40; 10.28-29; 1 John 5.10-13).
 3. If a believer stops abiding in Christ he is in danger of being punished and even being taken home (Proverbs 3.11-12; Hebrews 12.5-6; John 15.1-6; 1 Corinthians 5.5).
 4. A believer cannot have his salvation stolen from him by another person or by the forces of darkness (Romans 8.37-39).
 5. Eternal life is eternal. It is not a temporal thing that a person can have for a few years and then no longer have it (Matthew 25.46; John 3.16; 5.24; 6.40; 10.28-29; Romans 6.23; 1 John 5.11-13).

IV. Sanctification

- A. Definition of sanctify (*hagiazō*) is “make holy, purify or consecrate.”
- B. It is commanded (Matthew 5.48; 1 Peter 1.15-16; Leviticus 11.44-45; 19.2; 20.7).
- C. We should want to be holy.
 1. To please God (Hebrews 11.6).

2. To receive rewards (1 Corinthians 3.12-15; 2 Corinthians 5.10; Hebrews 11.6) (God knows every thought and motive – 1 Chron. 28.9; Jeremiah 17.10; Romans 2.16; Hebrews 4.12).
- D. Methods of sanctification (Proverbs 15.9).
1. Scripture (Psalm 25.4-5, 9; Proverbs 8.32-35; 22.17-21; Hosea 4.6, 14; 6.3; John 15.3; 17.17; Micah Romans 12.2; 1 Corinthians 3.2; Ephesians 5.26; Hebrews 5.12-14; 1 Peter 2.2).
 - a. Hear (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; Proverbs 8.34; Luke 18.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Rev. 1.3).
 1. Radio, TV, recordings.
 2. Sermons/teaching at church (Nehemiah 8.1-8; 1 Timothy 4.13; 2 Timothy 4.2; Titus 1.9; 2.15).
 - b. Read (Deuteronomy 17.19; Revelation 1.5).
 - c. Study (Psalm 1.2).
 1. Personal (Proverbs 8.34; John 5.39; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15).
 2. Family (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; 6.6-9; 11.19; 32.46-47; Proverbs 1.8; 2.1; 3.1; 4.1; 5.1; 6.20-23; 2 Timothy 3.15).
 3. Church (Nehemiah 8.7-8; 1 Timothy 4.11, 13; 2 Timothy 4.2; Titus 1.9; 2.15).
 - d. Memorize (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Rom. 10.8).
 - e. Meditate (Joshua 1.8; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; 1 Timothy 4.15).
 1. Father teaches us (Psalm 119.64).
 2. Son teaches us (1 Corinthians 2.16).
 3. Holy Spirit teaches us (John 14.26; 1 Cor. 2.13; 1 John 2.20, 27).
 2. Prayer (Proverbs 15.29; 28.9; Revelation 5.8; 8.3).
 - a. Who we should pray to?

1. Father (Matt. 6.8-13; John 14.13; 15.16).
 2. Son (John 14.14).
- b. Who we should pray with?
1. Spouse (I Corinthians 7.5; 1 Peter 3.7).
 2. Children (1 Thess. 5.17; Deut. 6.6-7).
 3. Brethren (Isaiah 56.7; Acts 1.14; 2.42; 4.31; 1 Timothy 2.1).
- c. How often we should pray? (1 Chronicles 16.11; Luke 11.5-10; 18.1-8; Ephesians 6.18; 1 Thess. 5.17; 1 Timothy 5.5).
- d. What prayer should consist of:
1. Praise (Psalm 35.28; 51.15; Hebrews 13.15; 1 Peter 2.9).
 2. Thanksgiving.
 - a. To God for His blessings (Ephesians 5.20; Col. 3.17; Phil. 4.6; 1 Thes. 5.18)
 - b. To God for people (1 Timothy 2.1).
 3. Petitions for the brethren (Daniel 9.20; Eph. 6.18; Phil. 1.3-4; Col. 1.9-12; 1 Tim. 2.8)
 4. Petitions for the lost (1 Timothy 2.1-2).
 5. Petitions for yourself (1 Samuel 1.27; Psalm 25.4-5; Jeremiah 33.3; Matthew 7.7-11; 26.41; Mark 11.24; John 16.24; Ephesians 3.20; James 5.13).
- e. How often we should pray for a specific thing? (Luke 11.5-10; 18.1-8)
1. Things we can pray for ourselves.
 - a. Wisdom, knowledge, understanding (Proverbs 2.6; James 1.5).
 - b. Boldness to share the Gospel (Eph. 6.19).
 - c. People to share the Gospel with (Acts 1.8).
 - d. Others to go with you to share the Gospel (Matthew 9.37-38).
 - e. An accountability partner (2 Timothy 3.16-17).

- f. A church that has dedicated pastors and that has a dynamic discipleship program (Matthew 28.19-20; 2 Timothy 2.15).
 - g. Brethren to make disciples of (Matthew 28.19-20; 2 Timothy 2.15).
 - f. We should agonize in our prayers (Deuteronomy 9.25-26; 1 Samuel 15.11; Luke 22.44; Acts 10.30; 1 Corinthians 7.5; Hebrews 5.7; James 5.16).
 - g. How to get our prayers answered yes (Proverbs 28.9; Jeremiah 29.13; Mark 11.24; John 15.7; 1 John 3.22; 5.14-15).
 - h. Some prayers are answered no (2 Corinthians 12.7-10).
 - i. Keep public prayer brief (Ecclesiastes 5.2; Matthew 6.7).
 - j. Examples of prayer:
 1. Jesus (Luke 22.41-46; 23.34, 46; John 17.1-26).
 2. Moses (Deuteronomy 9.25-29)
 3. Hannah (I Samuel 1.27).
 4. Solomon (I Kings 3.7-9).
 5. Elijah (I Kings 18.37-38).
 6. Ezra (Ezekiel 8.23).
 7. Daniel (Daniel 2.19-23; 9.3-19).
 8. Paul (Ephesians 3.14-21).
 9. Publican (Luke 18.13).
 10. Thief on the cross (Luke 23.42).
 11. Stephen (Acts 7.60).
- 3. Worship (1 Chronicles 16.29; Psalm 27.4; 84.10; 95.6; 96.9; Matthew 4.10; Revelation 14.7).
 - a. Who we should worship with?
 1. By yourself (Psalm 35.28; 51.15; 119.164; Matthew 4.10; John 4.24).
 2. Family (Deuteronomy 6.13).
 3. Brethren (1 Chronicles 16.29; Psalm 95.6; 149.1; Luke 19.37; 24.53; Acts 2.47; 16.25; Ephesians 5.19; Col.16).

- b. What the worship service consists of:
 - 1. Praise (Psalm 9.11; 33.2; 67.3; Luke 2.13-14; 24.53; John 7.14; Acts 2.46; 3.1; Hebrews 13.15; 1 Peter 2.9).
 - 2. Adoration (Matthew 2.11).
 - 3. Thanksgiving (Deuteronomy 8.10; Ps. 100.4; 107.22; Colossians 1.12; Hebrews 13.15).
 - 4. Giving (Matthew 2.11)
- 4. Delighting yourself and honoring the Lord one day each week (Isaiah 58.13-14).
- 5. Fellowship.
 - a. Family (Deut. 4.9-10; 6.6-9, 11.18-19; 32.46-47).
 - b. Brethren (Zechariah 7.9-10; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25; 1 Peter 4.7).
 - 1. Worship (Psalm 122.1).
 - 2. Prayer (Acts 4.31).
 - 3. Teaching (1 Tim. 4.13; 2 Tim. 4.2; Titus 1.9; 2.15).
 - c. Avoid fellowship with backsliders (Matthew 18.17; Romans 16.17; 1 Corinthians 5.11; 2 Thessalonians 3.6, 10, 14).
 - 5. Sharing the gospel (Matthew 28.19-20; 1 Peter 3.15).
 - a. With your family and relatives.
 - b. With your neighbors.
 - c. With your friends.
 - d. With those at work
 - e. With strangers.
 - 6. Walk and Run.
 - a. By the Spirit (Galatians 5.16, 18, 25)
 - b. By faith (2 Corinthians 5.7).
 - c. As Christ walked (1 John 2.6).
 - d. In love (Ephesians 5.2)
 - e. In the light (1 John 1.7)
 - f. In truth (Psalm 26.3; 86.11; 2 John 4; 3 John 3).
 - g. In newness of life (Romans 8.1).

- h. Worthy of our vocation (Ephesians 4.1)
- i. Circumspectly/wisely (Colossians 2.6).
- j. Not in the council of the wicked (Psalm 1.1).
- k. Run with endurance (Hebrews 12.1).
- l. Run to win (1 Corinthians 9.24).
 - 7. Keep your behavior perfect (Matt. 5.48; Phil. 1.27; 1 Peter 2.12)
 - 8. Lead a disciplined life (1 Cor. 9.24-27; Hebrews 12.1-2; 1 Peter 1.13).
 - 9. Hate evil and avoid the way of the world (Job 28.28; Psalm 34.13-14; Prov. 4.27; 8.13; 14.16; Galatians 6.14; 1 Thess. 4.3; 2 Timothy 2.19-22; 1 Peter 3.11; 4.1-4; 1 John 2.15-17).
 - 10. Have no fellowship with the world (Exodus 23.2; 34.12; Psalm 1.1; Proverbs 4.14; 21.1; 2 Cor. 6.14-18; Ephesians 5.11; James 4.4-5).
 - 11. Resist the Devil (Ephesians 4.26-27; 6.10-18; James 4.7; 1 Peter 5.8-9).
 - 12. Kill your carnal desires (Romans 6.1-6, 11-12, 18, 21-22; Galatians 2.20; 5.24).
 - 13. Look for the return of the Lord (1 Cor. 1.7; 1 Thess. 4.16-18; 2 Timothy 4.8; Titus 2.13; James 5.7-8; 1 John 2.28; 3.2-3).
- E. Backsliders (Prov. 14.14; Luke 9.62; Hebrews 10.38)
 - 1. Forms of backsliding:
 - a. Not abiding in Christ (John 15.1-6).
 - b. Indulging in immoral behavior (1 Cor. 5.11-13) 2 Thessalonians 3.6).
 - c. Avoid fellowship (Hebrews 10.24-25).
 - d. Become indifferent and without love (Luke 8.13-14; Revelation 2.4).
 - e. Love the world (1 Timothy 6.10; 2 Timothy 4.10)
 - f. Set up idols in one's heart (Ezekiel 14.3-4, 7).
 - g. Associate with cultists (1 Kings 11.4; 2 Chron. 25.14).

2. The Consequences of backsliding:
 - a. Discipline by the Lord (Psalm 39.11; Proverbs 3.11-12; Hebrews 12.5-6; Revelation 3.19).
 - b. Physical and spiritual ruin (Luke 15.11-32; 1 Timothy 1.19-20).
 - c. Physical death (John 15.2, 6).
3. Reconciliation (Luke 15.11-32).

V. Service

- A. Commands to serve God (Exodus 23.25; Deuteronomy 6.13; 10.12; 1 Samuel 7.3; 2 Chronicles 15.15; Psalm 2.11; 40.8; 100.2; Matthew 6.24; Luke 16.13; John 12.26; Acts 20.19; Romans 12.1-2; 1 Corinthians 7.20-24; 15.58; Colossians 3.24; Hebrews 12.28).
- B. Commands to serve man (Matthew 5.16; 10.42; Mark 10.43-44; Luke 10.30-37; John 12.3; 13.34; Romans 12.4-21; Galatians 6.2, 10; Ephesians 6.7; Colossians 3.23-24; 1 Timothy 6.18; Titus 2.7; 3.14, 18; James 2.15-16; 1 Peter 4.10; 1 John 3.16-18).
- C. Equip yourself with the armor of God (Eph. 6.10-18; Daniel 10.1-21).
 1. Gird your loins with truth (Know how to use Scripture defensively – Prov. 4.5-6, 10-13; 20-22)
 2. Shod your feet with the Gospel (Know how to share it – 1 Peter 3.15).
 3. Put on the breastplate of righteousness (Live a holy life – 1 Peter 1.15-16).
 4. Take up the shield of faith (We strengthen our faith by studying Scripture (Romans 10.17); by prayer (Acts 2.42); and by fellowship (Acts 2.42; 5.42; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25).
 5. Put on the helmet of Salvation (Have an assurance of your salvation – John 10.27-30; 1 John 5.11-13)
 6. Take up the sword (Know how to use Scripture in an offensive manner – Hebrews 4.12).
- D. Gird your minds for action (1 Peter 1.13).
- E. Love (1 Corinthians 13).

1. Love of the brethren (John 13.35; 15.12; Romans 12.9; Galatians 5.14; Ephesians 3.17-19; 5.2; Colossians 3.1; 1 Thess. 3.12; 4.9; Hebrews 13.1; 1 Peter 1.22; 1 John 3.23).
 2. Love of all men (Proverbs 25.21; Matthew 5.44-48; Romans 12.20; Galatians 5.6; 1 Thessalonians 3.12; Hebrews 13.2).
- F. Humility (Proverbs 3.34; Isaiah 66.2; Micah 6.8; Luke 22.26; Romans 12.3, 16; Philippians 2.1-9; James 1.9-11; 4.6, 10; 1 Peter 3.8; 5.5-6).
- G. Serve God by serving man (Romans 12.1-2; Gal 5.13).
1. Be a servant to all (Mark 9.35; 10.42-44).
 2. Bear each others burdens (Romans 15.1; Gal. 6.2).
 3. Do good to all men, especially the brethren (Galatians 6.10; Titus 2.7, 14; 3.8; 1 Peter 2.12).
 4. Share with all (1 Tim. 6.18 James 2.15-18; 1 John 3.17-18).
 5. Use your spiritual gifts (1 Peter 4.10).
 - a. Prophecy (Romans 12.6).
 - b. Service (Romans 12.7).
 - c. Teaching (Romans 12.7).
 - d. Exhortation (Romans 12.8).
 - e. Giving (Romans 12.8).
 - f. Leading (Romans 12.8).
 - g. Show mercy (Romans 12.8).
 - h. Word of wisdom (I Corinthians 12.8).
 - i. Word of knowledge (I Corinthians 12.8).
 - j. Faith (1 Corinthians 12.9).
 - k. Distinguishing of spirits (1 Corinthians 12.10).
- H. Serve for rewards (Exodus 23.25; Psalm 19.11; 58.11; Isaiah 40.10; 62.11; 1 Cor. 9.17; Hebrews 10.35; 11.6; 2 John 8; Revelation 22.12) .

VI. Evangelism

- A. Commands to evangelize the world (1 Chronicles 16.8; Psalm 67.2; 96.2; 105.1-3; Matt. 28.19-20; Acts 1.8).
- B. Learn how to share the Gospel (1 Peter 3.15).

- C. Pray for more soul winners (Matthew 9.37-38).
- D. Pray for the salvation of all kinds of people (1 Timothy 2.1-4).
- E. Follow Jesus (Matthew 4.19; John 12.26).
- F. Start sharing the Gospel (1 Chronicles 16.8; Psalm 9.1; 26.7; 35.28; 71.15; 96.2; 105.1-3; 145.6, 11-12; Proverbs 11.30; Daniel 12.3; Mark 16.15; 1 Corinthians 9.19-20; Jude 23).
- G. Some sow and some reap (John 4.35-36).
- H. Disciple those you lead to the Lord (Matthew 28.19-20).
- I. Disciple your children (Deut. 4.9-10; 6.5-7; 32.46; Psalm 78.3-7).

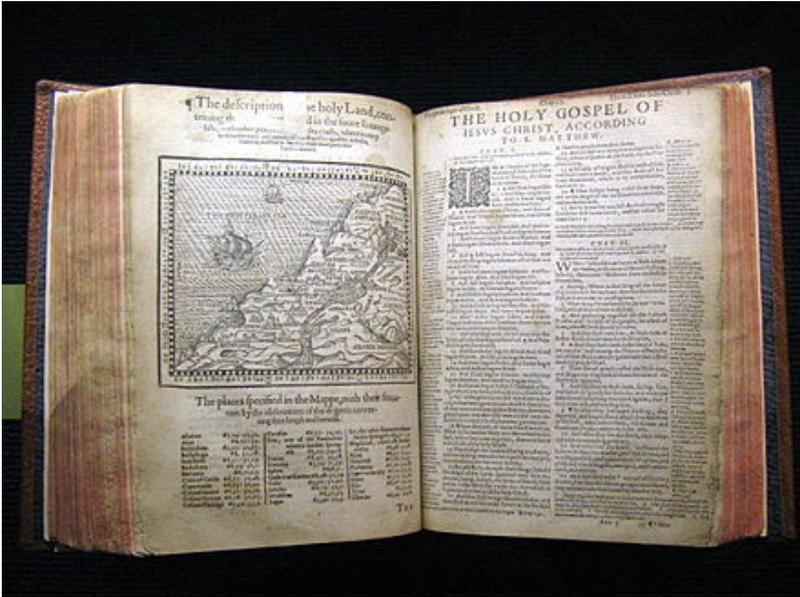
VII. Maturity

- A. Grow in the Word and in grace in the knowledge of the Lord (Ephesians 4.11-15; 1 Peter 2.2; 2 Peter 3.18).
- B. Seek wisdom, knowledge, understanding and discernment (Proverbs 1.1-7, 2.1-11; 3.1-4, 13, 21; 4.1, 5-7; 5.1-2; 7.1-4; 8.11; 9.6, 10-11; 10.14; 12.1; 13.16; 14.33; 15.14; 16.16; 18.15; 19.2, 8, 27; 22.17-19; 23.12, 23; 24.5, 13-14; 28.6; 30.3).
 - 1. Hearing Scripture daily (Deut. 4.9-10; Prov. 8.34; Luke 8.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Revelation 1.3).
 - 2. Reading Scripture daily (Deuteronomy 17.19; Psalm 42.1-2; 63.1; 143.6; Revelation 1.3).
 - 3. Studying the Bible (Deut. 8.3; Proverbs 2.1-5; 8.34; 22.17; John 5.39; Matt. 4.4; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15; 3.15).
 - 4. Memorizing Scripture (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Romans 10.8).
 - 5. Meditating on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5).
- C. Be a disciple (Matthew 28.19-20; Acts 11.26).

1. Deny self (Matthew 16.24; John 12.24-26).
 2. Love the Lord more than all else (Luke 14.26).
 3. Follow the Lord (Luke 14.27; John 12.26).
 4. Seek first the kingdom of God (Matthew 6.33).
 5. Be willing to give up all you have (Luke 14.33; Acts 5.4).
 6. Know Scripture (Psalm 25.4-5; Proverbs 1.5; 2.1-7; 3.1-4; 7.1-4; 8.10-11; 19.2; 22.17-21; Hosea 4.6, 14; 6.32; Acts 17.11; 2 Timothy 2.15; Hebrews 5.11-6.3).
 7. Endure (John 8.31; Galatians 6.6, 9; 1 Corinthians 15.58; Philippians 1.27; 3.14; 4.1; James 5.11; Heb. 12.1-4; 1 Peter 5.9; 2 Peter 3.17; Rev. 3.11).
 8. Be fruitful (John 15.5, 8, 16; Colossians 1.10).
 9. Make disciples (Matthew 28.19-20; 2 Timothy 2.2)
- D. Be a bonds slave (1 Peter 2.16; Revelation 1.1).
1. What a bonds slave is?
 - a. A slave who can go free but decides to remain a slave for life due to his love for his master
 - b. All Christians should live as a bonds slave of Messiah.
 2. Examples:
 - a. Paul (Romans 1.1; Philippians 1.1; Titus 1.1).
 - b. Timothy (Philippians 1.1).
 - c. James (1.1).
 - d. Peter (2 Peter 1.1).
 - e. Jude (v. 1).
 - f. John (Revelation 1.1).
- E. Suffer and endure persecution (Matthew 5.11; John 15.20; 16.33; Acts 5.40-42; 14.22; Romans 5.3-5; 8.17; 2 Corinthians 1.5; 12.10; Ephesians 2.21; 4.1, 13; Philippians 1.29; 3.10; 1 Thessalonians 3.3; 2 Thessalonians 1.5; 2 Timothy 1.8; 2.3-6, 9, 12; 3.12; James 1.2-4; 1 Peter 2.20-21; 3.9, 14-17; 4.1-2, 12-14, 19; 5.10).
1. Suffering and persecution result in:
 - a. Perseverance/endurance (Rom.5.3; James 1.3).
 - b. Proven character (Romans 5.4).

- c. Hope (Romans 5.4).
- d. Perfection/completion (James 1.4).
- 2. By our experience we can help others (Heb. 4.15).
- 3. We should be willing to die for the Lord and fellow believers (Daniel 3.17-18; John 15.13; Heb. 12.4; 1 John 3.16).
 - a. Examples of saints who were persecuted and martyred:
 - 1. Abel (Genesis 4.4-8) (martyr).
 - 2. Joseph (Genesis 37.18-28; 39.7-20).
 - 3. Moses (Exodus 16.2-3).
 - 4. David was persecuted by Saul for years.
 - 5. Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah (Daniel 3.19-27).
 - 6. Daniel (Daniel 6.3-24).
 - 7. Most of the prophets (Hebrews 11.32-40).
 - 8. John the Baptizer (Matthew 14.1-12) (martyr).
 - 9. John and Peter (Acts 4.13-22; 5.17-29).
 - 10. Peter (John 21.18-19) (martyr).
 - 11. Paul (Acts 9.16; 2 Corinthians 11.23-33).
 - 12. All of the apostles (John 16.2).
 - 13. Stephen (Acts 7.54-60) (martyr).
 - 14. James (Acts 12.1-2) (martyr).
 - 15. Barnabas (martyr).
 - 16. James, the son of Mary (martyr).
 - 17. Dr. Luke (martyr).
 - 18. Mark (martyr).
 - 19. Antipas (martyr).
 - 20. Polycarp (martyr).
 - 21. Justin Martyr (martyr).
 - 22. John Huss (martyr).
 - 23. William Tyndale (martyr).
 - 24. Hugh Latimer (martyr).
 - 25. Nicholas Ridley (martyr).
 - 26. Thomas Cranmer (martyr).
- F. Increase faith (Luke 17.5).
 - 1. To please God (Hebrews 11.6).

2. To endure and not lose our reward (James 1.12; Revelation 3.11).
 3. We increase it by the Word (Romans 10.17), prayer (Acts 2.42), fellowship (Acts 2.42; 5.42; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25) and worship (John 4.23-24).
- G. Guard yourself from idols (1 John 5.21).
1. Do not set up idols in your heart (Ezekiel 14.3-4, 7)
 2. Repent and turn away from the idols in your heart and turn away from all of your abomination (Ezekiel 14.6).



BELIEVER'S SOAP

Most people who live in civilized societies practice the basics of personal hygiene on a daily basis. They shower, brush their teeth, comb their hair, change their clothing and use deodorant and perfume or cologne.

Believers should do the same in the spiritual realm. If we do not shower using soap we will stink after a couple days. That soap is the Word of YAHWEH. We must read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture daily or we will stink. This book shows you the necessity of taking a spiritual bath or shower every day.

If you want to learn how to be spiritually clean order your copy of *Believer's Soap*. Email the DOV Book Shoppe – dovbooks@yahoo.com

DISCIPLESHIP COURSE

FINAL EXAM

This is an open book exam. You may use the Bible and this book. Answer as many questions as you can, using only the Bible and this book. Cite as many Scriptures as you can for the answer to each question. Then use this book to finish the exam.

Introduction

1. In the First Century what was the name of the Christian faith?

2. Is every true believer in Jesus Christ a disciple?

3. What activities should a disciple of Jesus Christ do on a regular basis?
 - A.

 - B.

 - C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

4. Should every believer know how to teach the Bible?

5. Was the Great Commission given to all believers?

6. Should every believer be able to share the Gospel in a clear and concise manner?

7. Should every believer eventually know how to make a disciple?

Sin and Judgment

1. Is everyone born with a sin nature or do we acquire a sin nature by sinning?

2. At what age does everyone go astray – follow the path of sin?

3. What are the wages of sin?

4. Will those who die in their sins be judged for every sin they committed?

5. Will there be varying degrees of punishment in Hell and the Lake of Fire?

6. Where will those who die in their sins be sent to after they are judged at the Great White Throne Judgment?

7. How long will the wicked remain in their new home?

8. Are the descriptions of Hell and the final abode of the wicked literal or symbolic?

Salvation

1. What must a person do to be saved?

2. What is the Gospel of Jesus Christ?

A.

B.

C.

3. By what and through what are we saved?

4. Can a person be saved apart from Jesus?

5. Can members of religions that do not believe that Jesus Christ is God be saved and go to Heaven?

6. Do those who die without believing in Jesus Christ get a second chance to be saved after they die?

7. Should there be noticeable changes in a person's life after they are saved?

8. If there is no visible change in a person's life could it mean their confession of faith in Jesus Christ was not sincere?

9. Does saying a salvation prayer save you?

10. Can a person think they are saved and not be born from above?

Sanctification

1. What is the definition of sanctified?

2. Name as many methods of sanctification as you can.

A.

B.

C.

D.

3. What four things does worship consist of?

A.

B.

C.

D.

4. How often should we read the Bible?

5. How often should we study Scripture?

6. Should every believer memorize Scripture and why?

7. How often should we meditate on Scripture?

8. How often should we pray?

9. Who should we pray to?
 - A.

 - B.

10. How often should we pray for a specific thing?

11. Will our prayers always be answered as we want them to be?

12. Does the Lord answer some of our prayers to teach us a lesson?

13. What can keep our prayers from being answered?

14. What must we do to have our prayers answered?

15. Should we ever be unequally yoked with an unsaved person?

16. Should a disciple associate with, fellowship with or hangout with a backslidden Christian?

17. What does the Lord do to backslidden believers?

18. Are we to actively kill our carnal desires?

19. Should we look for the return of the Lord?

20. How do you look for the return of the Lord?

Service

1. List your spiritual weapons of warfare.

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

2. Do you know what your spiritual gifts are? List them.

A.

B.

C.

D.

3. List some things we can do for the brethren.

A.

B.

C.

D.

4. Should we go out of our way and be eager to help the brethren?

Evangelism

1. What is the Great Commission?

A.

B.

C.

2. What should we pray about concerning soul winning?

3. Is there a need for every believer to be a disciple and know how to disciple others?

4. List some reasons why every believer should be a disciple and then make disciples.

A.

B.

C.

5. Write out a list of verses that you would quote to share the Gospel.

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

J.

K.

L.

M.

N.

O.

P.

Q.

Maturity

1. List the ten things a disciple should do on a regular basis.

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

J.

2. Describe what a bond servant of the first century was.

3. Will all true disciples suffer for their faith?

4. Are you willing to die for the Lord and fellow believers?

5. List the ways you can increase your faith.

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.

AFTERWORD

Discipleship is the key to living a successful Christian life and to having a successful church. Every Christian should be discipled and in turn make disciples. All Christian parents need to be discipled so they can disciple their children who can then disciple their children. No pastor or layman has a legitimate excuse to neglect discipleship.

Believers, go through the first ten steps at your own pace. When you get to Step 10 thank the Lord and share your knowledge, understanding and wisdom with at least one other person. Try to disciple as many Christians as the Lord gives you. Volunteer to take others in your church through those steps. Try to complete steps 11 through 20. If you complete Step 20 seek to help others go through those steps.

Parents, go through this discipleship course so you will be able to disciple your children.

Grandparents, take this course so you will be able to help your children disciple your grandchildren.

Pastors, train faithful men to help you teach this discipleship course to the members of the flock God has given you charge of and then begin to disciple your flock as Jesus wants you to.

Believers, not every Christian will teach a Bible class, but all Christians feed others the Truth by their words (Proverbs 10.21) and their actions (1 Peter 1.14-16). Remember the two commandments:

“You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might. These words, which I am commanding you today, shall be on

your heart. You shall teach them diligently to your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up.” (Deuteronomy 6.5-7)

“But you shall love your neighbor as yourself; I am the LORD.” (Leviticus 19.18b)

Jesus repeated the two great commandments and (Mark 12.29-31), and said there is no other commandment greater than these.

Christians love God daily by obeying Him. One of His primary commands is to seek after knowledge, understanding and wisdom:

***Acquire wisdom! Acquire understanding!** Do not forget nor turn away from the words of my mouth. Do not forsake her, and she will guard you; Love her, and she will watch over you. The beginning of wisdom is: **Acquire wisdom;** And with all your acquiring, **get understanding.** Prize her, and she will exalt you; She will honor you if you embrace her. She will place on your head a garland of grace ; She will present you with a crown of beauty. (Proverbs 4.5-9)*

Buy the truth, and sell it not; also wisdom, and instruction, and understanding. (Proverbs 23.23)

All Christians should seek after knowledge, understanding and wisdom as though they are more valuable than gold, silver and precious jewels because they are:

*My son, if you will receive my words And treasure my commandments within you, Make your ear attentive to wisdom, Incline your heart to understanding; For if you cry for discernment, Lift your voice for understanding; **If you seek her as silver And search for her as for hidden treasures;** Then you will discern the fear of the LORD And discover the knowledge of God. For the LORD gives wisdom; From His mouth come knowledge and*

understanding. He stores up sound wisdom for the upright; He is a shield to those who walk in integrity. (Proverbs 2.1-7)

*How blessed is the man who finds wisdom and the man who gains understanding. **For her profit is better than the profit of silver and her gain better than fine gold. She is more precious than jewels; and nothing you desire compares with her.*** (Proverbs 3.13-15)

Take my instruction and not silver, and knowledge rather than choicest gold. For wisdom is better than jewels; and all desirable things cannot compare with her.” (Proverbs 8.10-11)

How much better it is to get wisdom than gold! And to get understanding is to be chosen above silver! (Proverbs 16.16)

You have to love yourself before you can love God and your neighbor. A proof that you truly love Him and yourself is if you daily seek after wisdom. “*He who gets wisdom loves his own soul; He who keeps understanding will find good*” (Proverbs 19.8).

Where is wisdom found? It is found in the Bible. Read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture every day. Devote your life to the Word of God and to prayer. When He gives you knowledge, understanding and wisdom share it with others. Disciple as many people as you can, and never stop making disciples.

Make copies of Appendixes A through C for your personal use and give them to others. Go to the book’s website to print them out – www.makedisciplesofallthenations.com.

Pastors, make copies of Appendixes E and F, and give them to your assistant pastors, Bible teachers and deacons.

Every Christian should consider what God said to His people during the days of Isaiah:

“If because of the sabbath, you turn your foot from doing your own pleasure on My holy day, and call the sabbath a delight, the holy day of the LORD honorable, and honor it, desisting from your own ways, from seeking your own pleasure and speaking your own word, then you will take delight in the LORD, and I will make you ride on the heights of the earth; and I will feed you with the heritage of Jacob your father, for the mouth of the LORD has spoken.” (Isaiah 58.13-14)

Brothers and sisters, consider giving one day to the Lord. It does not matter which day you choose. Sunday is best for most people because a few hours are devoted to the worship of the Lord and fellowship with the brethren. To spend the rest of the day and evening in prayer, the study of Scripture, memorizing, reviewing and meditation makes sense.

Why should the children of God devote one day each week delighting themselves in the Lord? We do not have to in order to be saved or to maintain our salvation. Yet everyone who comes to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ has just one purpose in living – bringing glory to God in everything they do (1 Corinthians 10.31). The two most important ways believers bring glory to God is by leading people to the Lord and then discipling them. Remember these two important truths:

Everything we do for ourselves and not for God will be forgotten forever and we will have no reward.

Everything we do for God will be remembered forever and we will have eternal rewards.

Do you want to spend your life doing things that will be forgotten forever and bring you no eternal rewards? Or do you want to do things that will bring glory and honor to God that will be remembered forever and bring you eternal rewards? The choice is yours. Choose wisely every day.

A final thought to meditate on is – Be thankful you are living in the Church Age and not in the Age of the Patriarchs:

They sacrificed to the LORD that day 700 oxen and 7,000 sheep from the spoil they had brought. They entered into the covenant to seek the LORD God of their fathers with all their heart and soul; and whoever would not seek the LORD God of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, man or woman. Moreover, they made an oath to the LORD with a loud voice, with shouting, with trumpets and with horns. Judah rejoiced concerning the oath, for they had sworn with their whole heart and had sought Him earnestly, and He let them find Him. So the LORD gave them rest on every side. (2 Chronicles 15.11-15)

We are not told if anyone refused to give “*all their heart and soul*” to the Lord. Yet we know that some backsliders paid the ultimate price when they worshipped the golden calf:

He said to them, “Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel, ‘Every man of you put his sword upon his thigh, and go back and forth from gate to gate in the camp, and kill every man his brother, and every man his friend, and every man his neighbor.’” So the sons of Levi did as Moses instructed, and about three thousand men of the people fell that day. (Exodus 32.27-28)

As we have seen there were times in the Old Testament dispensation when backsliders paid with their lives, but all backsliders of all ages get a fill of their own ways:

The backslider in heart will have his fill of his own ways, but a good man will be satisfied with his. (Proverbs 14.14)

Along with backsliders the Law required that false teachers and false prophets who led the people astray be put to death (Deuteronomy 13.1-11; 17.2-7; 18.20). And those who rebelled against God (Korah’s rebellion) and those who merely grumbled against God were executed by Him (Numbers 16.30-35, 41-50).

God has been more lenient in the Church Age, but not every backslider can live in sin indefinitely. There comes a time when God will take a child of His home if they backslide too long (1 Corinthians 5.5). We do not know when that may be. It is absolute foolishness to test Him. If one thinks he can live in sin indefinitely and be saved he may be deceiving himself. It is time for him to examine his faith:

Test yourselves to see if you are in the faith; examine yourselves! Or do you not recognize this about yourselves, that Jesus Christ is in you-unless indeed you fail the test? (2 Corinthians 13.5)

If you want to live in sin like the wicked what makes you think you are truly born from above? It is highly likely your confession of faith was not sincere. ALL true believers want to live for their Savior and not for their petty lusts and desires.

Discipleship is the key to serving God fully. Unless a believer is discipled he/she can never serve God to the maximum. If you want to bring the ultimate amount of glory to God be *disciple* and then *disciple* as many people as God gives you.

But sanctify Christ as Lord in your hearts, always being ready to make a defense to everyone who asks you to give an account for the hope that is in you, yet with gentleness and reverence. (1 Peter 3.15)

Study, memorize and meditate on the passages below. If they do not motivate you to be a *disciple* pray that God give you the desire to be a *disciple*. If you do not develop the desire to be a *disciple* and to *disciple* others we can only ask you to examine your faith (2 Corinthians 13.5).

Like newborn babies, long for the pure milk of the word, that by it you may grow in respect to salvation. (1 Peter 2.2)

As the deer pants for the water brooks, so my soul pants for Thee, O God. My soul thirsts for God, for the living

*God; When shall I come and appear before God?
(Psalm 42.1-2)*

*O God, Thou are my God; I shall seek Thee earnestly;
my soul thirsts for Thee, my flesh yearns for Thee, in a
dry and weary land where there is no water. (Psalm
63.1)*

*I stretch out my hands to Thee; my soul longs for Thee,
as a parched land. (Psalm 143.6)*

*...that he might make you understand that man does not
live by bread alone, but man lives by everything that
proceeds out of the mouth of the LORD. (Deuteronomy
8.3)*

*But He answered and said, “It is written, ‘MAN SHALL
NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY
WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF
GOD.’” (Matthew 4.4)*

Do you live by every “word that proceeds out of the mouth
of God”?

APPENDIX A

THE GOSPEL

The most important thing any person can ever do is know where he/she will spend eternity. The Creator of the universe said there are only two places where a person can go when he dies – Heaven or Hell:

Everyone is a sinner in need of salvation:

For all have sinned, and fall short of the glory of God.
(Romans 3.23)

Those who die in their sins will be judged and suffer punishment in the Lake of Fire for all eternity:

And inasmuch as it is appointed for men to die once and after this comes judgment. (Hebrews 9.27)

And these will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal. (Matthew 25.46)

He who believes in the Son has eternal life; but he who does not obey the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abides on him. (John 3.36)

And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life he was thrown into the lake of fire. (Revelation 20.15)

All the riches and pleasures of the world are not worth eternal punishment:

For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? Or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul? (Mark 8.36-37)

Yet even though all have sinned, one can escape eternal punishment in the Lake of Fire, and have eternal life through Jesus Christ:

*For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in **Christ Jesus our Lord.** (Romans 6.23)*

Salvation is available to all because:

*But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, **Christ** died for us. (Romans 5.8)*

In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace. (Eph.1.7)

Belief in Jesus Christ is the only way to be saved:

Jesus said to him, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me.” (John 14.6)

“And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must be saved.” (Acts 4.12)

Salvation is by grace through faith in Jesus Christ alone:

For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God; not as a result of works, that no one should boast. (Ephesians 2.8-9)

What must one do to be saved?

*That if you confess with your mouth **Jesus** as Lord, and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you shall be saved: for with the heart man*

believes, resulting in righteousness, and with the mouth he confesses, resulting in salvation. (Romans 10.9-10)

If you believe God the Father raised Jesus from the dead, call upon Jesus Christ to save you right now:

For “WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED.” (Romans 10.13)

Today is your day of salvation:

Behold, now is “THE ACCEPTABLE TIME,” behold, now is “THE DAY OF SALVATION.” (2 Corinthians 6.2b)

Receive Jesus today for you do not know what tomorrow may bring:

But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name. (John 1.12)

SHORT GOSPEL PRESENTATION

Everyone is a sinner in need of salvation:

For all have sinned, and fall short of the glory of God. (Romans 3.23)

Those who die in their sins will be judged:

And inasmuch as it is appointed for men to die once and after this comes judgment. (Hebrews 9.27)

Yet even though all have sinned, one can escape eternal punishment in the Lake of Fire, and have eternal life through Jesus Christ:

*For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in **Christ Jesus** our Lord. (Romans 6.23)*

Salvation is available to all:

*But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, **Christ** died for us. (Romans 5.8)*

Belief in Jesus Christ is the only way to be saved:

Jesus said to him, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me.” (John 14.6)

If you believe God the Father raised Jesus from the dead, call upon Jesus Christ to save you right now:

*For “**WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED.**” (Romans 10.13)*



FAITH TEST

Faith Test is a book that every believer needs to read. Paul exhorted the believers in Corinth to examine themselves to see if they were in the faith:

Try yourselves if you are in the faith; prove yourselves! Or do you not recognize yourselves that YAHSHUA Messiah is in you, unless you are rejected. (2 Corinthians 13.5)

To order your copy of *Faith Test* email – dovbooks@yahoo.com

APPENDIX B

FAITH CHECK

Take a few minutes and examine your daily walk.

Spiritual Activities	Average time spent weekly
-----------------------------	----------------------------------

Prayer	_____
--------	-------

Reading and studying the Bible	_____
--------------------------------	-------

Memorization & Meditation	_____
---------------------------	-------

Worship/devotions with family	_____
-------------------------------	-------

Fellowship with believers	_____
---------------------------	-------

Helping others	_____
----------------	-------

Being disciplined/discipling others	_____
-------------------------------------	-------

Sharing the Gospel	_____
--------------------	-------

Total time serving Jesus	_____
---------------------------------	-------

Worldly activities	Average time spent weekly
---------------------------	----------------------------------

Watching TV & movies	_____
----------------------	-------

Internet	_____
----------	-------

Reading (secular books/magazines)	_____
-----------------------------------	-------

Hobbies and Recreation	_____
------------------------	-------

Attending sporting events	_____
---------------------------	-------

Socializing (in person or by phone)	_____
-------------------------------------	-------

Other non-spiritual activities	_____
--------------------------------	-------

Total time serving yourself	_____
------------------------------------	-------

APPENDIX C

SPIRITUAL FITNESS PROGRAM

God the Father commands every child of His to be spiritually fit. This includes denying oneself of the pleasures of the world, living a holy and disciplined life, daily study of Scripture, living by every Word that proceeds from His mouth and then teaching others:

*Therefore, putting aside all malice and all deceit and hypocrisy and envy and all slander, like newborn babies, **long for the pure milk of the word**, so that by it you may grow in respect to salvation. (1 Peter 2.1-2)*

*Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, **accurately handling the word of truth**. (2 Timothy 2.15)*

*Now these were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with great eagerness, **examining the Scriptures daily** to see whether these things were so. (Acts 17.11)*

But He answered and said, “It is written, ‘**MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF GOD.**’” (Matthew 4.4)

*“These words, which I am commanding you today, **shall be on your heart**. You shall teach them diligently to*

your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up.” (Deuteronomy 6.6-7)

There are a few basic things that a believer in Jesus Christ must do to become a faithful *disciple*:

1. **Pray** (Deuteronomy 9.25-26; 1 Samuel 15.11; 1 Chronicles 16.11; Psalm 88.9; Proverbs 15.29; Isaiah 56.7; Matthew 5.44; 6.5-6; 7.7-11; 26.41; Luke 11.5-10; 18.1-8; John 14.13-14; 15.16; 16.24; Acts 1.14; 2.42; 4.31; 6.4; 1 Corinthians 7.5; Ephesians 6.18; Philippians 4.6; Colossians 4.2; 1 Thessalonians 5.17; 1 Timothy 2.1-2; 5.5; 2 Timothy 2.8; James 1.5; 1 Peter 3.7).
2. **Listen** to Scripture (Deuteronomy 4.10; Proverbs 8.34; 22.17; 23.12; Luke 8.15, 21; 11.28; James 1.22; Revelation 1.3).
3. **Read** Scripture (Deuteronomy 17.19; Isaiah 34.16; Revelation 1.3).
4. **Study** Scripture (Proverbs 2.1-5; 8.34; John 5.39; Acts 17.11; Romans 15.4; 2 Timothy 2.15).
5. **Memorize** Scripture (Deuteronomy 6.6; 11.18; 30.14; Psalm 37.31; 40.8; 119.11; Proverbs 2.1; 3.1, 3; 4.1, 21; 6.21; 22.18; Isaiah 51.7; Ezekiel 3.10; Romans 10.8; Colossians 3.16).
6. **Meditate** on Scripture (Joshua 1.8; Job 22.22; 23.12; Psalm 1.2; 4.4; 19.14; 63.6; 77.12; 104.34; 119.15, 23, 27, 48, 78, 97, 99, 148; 143.5; Colossians 3.16).
7. **Fellowship** with the brethren (Psalm 22.22; 119.63; Proverbs 13.20; Acts 2.42, 46-47; 5.42; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25; 1 John 1.7).

8. **Worship** with the brethren and privately (Deuteronomy 6.13; 26.10; 1 Chronicles 16.29; Psalm 2.11; 29.2; 96.9; 99.5, 9; 132.7; Jeremiah 7.2; Matthew 4.10; John 4.23-24; Romans 12.1; Philippians 3.3; Revelation 4.10; 14.17; 19.10; 22.9)
9. **Share the Gospel** (Psalm 9.1; 26.7; 35.28; 96.2; Proverbs 11.30; Mark 16.15; Acts 2.47; 1 Peter 3.15).
10. **Be discipled** (Proverbs 1.8; 4.1; 6.20; Eph. 4.11-13).
12. **Make disciples** (Deuteronomy 4.9-10; 6.5-7; 11.18-19; 31.16; 32.46; Psalm 78.3-7; Proverbs 1.8; 4.1; 6.20; 22.6; Joel 1.3; Matthew 28.19-20; Ephesians 4.11-13; 6.4; 2 Tim. 2.2).

1. **PRAY:** Pray often for your family, friends, fellow employees, employer, church members, pastors, and city, state and federal politicians. Pray with your family daily and with church members on a regular basis. Begin and end each day in prayer, and pray throughout the day. Pray that God teach you each day as you study His word.

2. **LISTEN TO SCRIPTURE:** Play recordings of the Bible and listen to sermons and Bible studies.

3. **READ SCRIPTURE:** Make a reading program and stay with it. If you read three chapters a day in the Old Testament and one in the New Testament you will read the Bible through in one year. It is also important to read one chapter of Proverbs each day. It does not take more than a half-hour a day to read five chapters. If you watch TV have your Bible handy and read a chapter during commercial breaks. Anyone could read ten chapters a day by just taking a Bible break during commercials.

4. **STUDY SCRIPTURE:** Choose a book of the Bible or a topic to study, and stay with it until you finish it.

5. **MEMORIZE SCRIPTURE:** Memorize key verses from both the Old and New Testaments.

6. **MEDITATE ON SCRIPTURE:** Once you have a few verses memorized you can meditate on them any time of the day, and wherever you are. Until then keep a pocket Bible or pocket New Testament handy. Keep a Bible and a few New Testaments in your car at all times for yourself and others. Get into the habit of giving out Bibles and pocket New Testaments.

7. **FELLOWSHIP WITH THE BRETHREN:** Become an active member of a church. Support the church with your time, talents, treasure and spiritual gifts. If you cannot find a real church meet with believers in a home.

8. **WORSHIP:** It is so important that there are more commands to worship God than to pray, study the Bible, memorize Scripture or meditate on the Word. Every believer should spend time each day worshipping God. We worship God by being silent and meditating on the blessings He has given you; by thanking and praising Him by rejoicing and singing.

9. **SHARE THE GOSPEL:** Once you learn how to share the Gospel be ready to do so 24/7. Be sensitive to the leading of the Holy Spirit to share the Gospel. Carry tracts with you and hand them out as you are prompted by the Holy Spirit. If the person(s) wants to talk – speak with them, but if they do not want to talk ask them to read the tract, and pray as you walk away. Keep a diary of your witnessing. When you lead someone to the Lord invite them to church and make sure they become an active member. If you are not mature enough to disciple them ask your pastor(s) to find someone to disciple them.

10. **BE DISCIPLED:** Find someone to disciple you or find a good book on discipleship such as *Make Disciples of all the Nations*.

11. **MAKE DISCIPLES:** Once you have been discipled, start to disciple others. If you are a husband disciple your wife. If

you are a father disciple your children. If you are a mother disciple your children with your husband. If you are single lead a person to the Lord and disciple him/her. Never disciple a person of the opposite sex unless you are engaged.

If a believer develops a discipline in these basics of holy living he will become a *disciple* of Jesus Christ. It does not happen overnight. It takes many years to become a mature *disciple*, but it starts with the daily discipline of being in prayer, in the Word and in regular fellowship with other believers.

Pray in the morning, throughout the day and before you go to sleep. Set up a daily Bible reading program. If you read 4 chapters a day you will read through the Bible in a year. Read 3 chapters in the Old Testament each day and 1 chapter in the New Testament. Buy an audio copy of the Bible, and listen to it at home and in the car. Buy DVDs of movies about the Bible and watch them often (*The Gospel of John, Peter and Paul, The Greatest Story Ever Told, King of Kings*, etc.). Memorize Scripture. If you memorize one verse a week you will have 52 verses memorized in one year. Meditate on Scripture and let the Holy Spirit teach you. Learn how to share the gospel. Ask your pastor to train you, and then share your personal testimony and the gospel as the Lord leads.

As you grow in the Lord you will pray more, and listen to, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture more and more. You will share your gospel more often, and spend more time in fellowship with other believers.



HOW TO BE FILLED WITH THE SPIRIT

How to be Filled with the Spirit shows you how you can be filled with the SPIRIT every day 24-7.

YAHWEH commands all believers in YAHSHUA Messiah to be filled with the SPIRIT and He tells us how to do that.

To learn how to be filled with the SPIRIT order your copy of *How to be Filled with the Spirit*. Email the DOV Book Shoppe – dovbooks@yahoo.com

APPENDIX D

BE FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT

And be not drunk with wine in which is debauchery, but be filled with the Spirit. (Ephesians 5.18)

Believers in Jesus Christ are not to be intoxicated (drunk) with wine and in like manner to not get “high” with drugs (legal or illegal). Instead we are to “*be filled with the Spirit.*” What does it mean to “*be filled with the Spirit*”? Does it mean we must have a “second blessing” in which the Holy Spirit empowers us to do the work of the Lord?

Scripture does not say that before we can be “*filled*” or empowered with and by the Holy Spirit we must have a special “second blessing.” Instead it is a daily activity. It is something we must do when we first awake and then throughout the day.

The first thing we should do when we wake up is ask the Holy Spirit to fill us and lead us that day. Prayer at the beginning of a day makes it go by much more smoothly. Prayer gets us in the proper attitude so we can let our light shine throughout the entire day. The second thing one should consider is spending time in the Word. A quiet time in the Word when one first gets up fills us with the Word. Being filled with the Word and the Holy Spirit is the same thing because the words that Jesus spoke are “*spirit*” and “*life*” (John 6.63). Not only are the words that He spoke “*spirit*” and “*life*” but all Scripture is:

All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness. (2 Timothy 3.16)

Prayer throughout the day (1 Thessalonians 5.17) is a spiritual habit that keeps our mind set on the things above and not the things of this sin-filled world (Colossians 3.2). Being filled with the Word several times throughout the day is another spiritual habit that will conform us to the image of Jesus (Romans 8.29). Taking Bible breaks is vital to be continually “*filled*” with the Holy Spirit. Take a Bible or New Testament with you when you leave home and read a few chapters during the day. If you cannot take a Bible with you to work or when you are out meditate on Scripture that you have memorized. When you hide the Word of God in your heart you always have it with you to meditate on.

By praying several times throughout the day and taking Bible breaks one can continually be “*filled*” with the Holy Spirit. The more often one feeds on Scripture and prays the more he will grow. Babies would die within a few days if they were not given food. The same is true of newborn believers. If they are not given spiritual food they quickly die spiritually. The more spiritual food they receive the faster and stronger they grow. One or two twenty minute sermons each week may keep a believer alive spiritually, but that is life-support nourishment. To grow into a strong, mature and vital disciple one must feed on Scripture several times each day. All believers need to listen to, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture daily and wash the Word down with prayer. If you do that faithfully every day God will bless you with myriad spiritual blessings, not physical blessings.

If you want to be a disciplined and dedicated disciple of Jesus you must be a spiritual glutton, feeding on the holy Word of God throughout each day and praying always. Instead of being a glutton of physical food and pleasures of the world be a glutton of spiritual food.

APPENDIX E

HUMILITY

Humility is a spiritual trait that few believers in Jesus Christ have because it is impossible to obtain it through the flesh. Humility only comes when a believer surrenders his life to the Lord every day. Surrender is daily obedience to God and dying to oneself, the flesh and the world.

One obeys God by praying throughout the day from morning to night (1 Thessalonians 5.17); by daily reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on Scripture; by regular fellowship with the brethren (Acts 2.42, 46-47; Hebrews 3.13; 10.24-25); by continual sharing of the Gospel (Psalm 96.2; Acts 2.47; 1 Peter 3.15) and by making disciples (Matthew 28.19-20; 1 Timothy 2.15).

One dies daily to self by not doing things that feed the ego. Instead of spending time seeking to have your ego built up by the approval, attention, love, respect and honor from others, and seeking fame, glory and riches we need to seek how we can build others up by giving approval to their good deeds, and by giving them attention, love, respect and honor (Philippians 2.1-9). The road to humility is travelled by building others up in the faith, not demanding others build us up in the faith or build up our egos.

A believer also dies to the flesh daily by not engaging in things that the sinful flesh desires and which are sins. Two of the most prevalent sins of the flesh are gluttony and intoxication (by alcohol or drugs). Excessive indulgence in some other activities of the flesh that are not a sin, which most believers should consider reducing, are: sex (with spouse), partying, sports, hobbies, vacationing and chit-chatting.

The way to die to yourself is to spend more time in spiritual activities than of the flesh which are not necessary for survival. Everyone must eat to live, but gluttony is a sin. Everyone needs bodily exercise, but excessive exercise is a misuse of the Lord's time. The same is true of partying, sports, hobbies, vacationing and chit-chatting. These things are not sins, but excessive indulgence in them is.

A believer dies to the world by reducing his involvement in worldly activities or by cutting them out altogether. Some other worldly activities that most believers spend far too much time in are: television, movies, music, Internet, politics, non-spiritual books and magazines, and seeking after wealth and possessions. Every believer who desires to die to himself and live a holy life for the glory of God will spend more time each day in prayer, Scripture, fellowship and soul-winning than in activities of the world.

We know we are growing in the Lord and dying to ourselves, the flesh and the world when our self love, our love of the flesh and our love of the world diminishes as it should:

Love not the world, nor the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes and the boastful pride of life, is not from the Father but is from the world. And the world is passing away, and also its lusts, but the one who does the will of God abides forever. (1 John 2.15-17)

The more these sinful desires diminish the more humble one will be. Pride is the opposite of humility. Pride is the root of every sin. There is no sin a person can commit that does not spring from pride. That is why the key to holy living is humility which replaces pride, and when pride is vanquished so is sin. No one can ever eliminate all traces of pride and sin, but it should be the goal of every true believer.

Humility is a spiritual trait that every believer should not only desire, but actively seek after. God does not use His children to bring Him glory until they are humble. A believer

who humbles himself before God will be looked upon by God with grace (Isaiah 66.2; Proverbs 3.34; James 4.6) and He will have regard for him (Psalm 138.6). When we humble ourselves before God and those around us He will exalt us (James 4.10). We must never forget that all believers are commanded to “*humble*” themselves before God (1 Peter 5.6), “*walk humbly with*” God (Micah 6.8), be “*humble in spirit*” (1 Peter 3.8), clothe themselves “*with humility*” (1 Peter 5.5) and to not be proud (Romans 12.16).

Humility is always better than pride (Proverbs 16.19) and it is the only way to obtain true riches, honor and life (Proverbs 22.4). Pride will bring a person down while humility will bring him honor (Proverbs 11.2; 16.18; 29.23). We must also remember that there are numerous warnings against pride (Psalm 10.2; 40.4; 73.6; 119.78; Proverbs 3.7; 26.12; 28.25; Isaiah 5.21; 13.11; John 9.41; Revelation 3.17). Pride is a sin (Proverbs 21.4), one of the seven things that YAHWEH hates and that is an abomination to Him (Proverbs 6.17; 8.13).

Humility is one of the most difficult traits for anyone to obtain. No one can be humble in his own power. We must rely on the power of the Holy Spirit to impart humility to us. Yet there are specific things we must do on a daily and regular basis before He will give us humility. The daily things we should do as noted previously are pray, read, study, memorize and meditate on Scripture. The things one should do on a regular basis are fellowship with the brethren and share the Gospel with the lost as the Holy Spirit leads. These are the basics, but there are many other things a dedicated believer should do on a daily basis:

Seek first the kingdom of God (Matthew 6.33)

Put on the armor of God (Ephesians 6.10-18)

Fight the good fight of faith (1 Timothy 6.12)

Transform your mind (Romans 12.2)

Take up your cross (Matthew 10.38-39; 16.24-26)

Deny yourself (Romans 12.1)

Be content in your circumstances (Phil. 4.3; 1 Tim. 6.6-8; Hebrews 13.5)

Give thanks in all circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5.18)
Continually offer praise to God (Hebrews 13.15)
Forsake the world and all that is in it (Romans 12.2;
Galatians 6.14; 1 Peter 1.14; 1 John 2.15-17)
Flee from seeking after riches (1 Timothy 6.9-11)
Submit to others (Ephesians 5.21)
Obey your spiritual leaders (Hebrews 13.17)
Love the brethren (John 13.34-35; James 2.15-16; 1 John
3.16-18)
Love the lost and your enemies (Prov. 25.21; Matthew
5.43-48)
Be rich in good works (1 Timothy 6.18; Galatians 6.10;
Ephesians 2.10; 2 Timothy 3.17; Hebrews 13.16)
Do not grow weary in doing good works (2 Thess. 3.13)
Give to those in need (Leviticus 25.35; Deuteronomy 15.7;
Proverbs 11.24-25; 19.17; 21.13; 22.9; 28.27; Ecclesiastes
11.1; Isaiah 58.7; Matthew 5.42; Luke 6.38; 12.33; Acts
11.29; Romans 12.13; Hebrews 13.1-2; James 1.27; 1 Peter
4.9)
Lead a tranquil and quiet life in all godliness and dignity
(1 Timothy 2.1).

As we do these things day-by-day we will grow more humble and be used by God for His glory (1 Corinthians 10.31) more each day. Others will see the Lord working through us and may be encouraged to follow our example. Pastors must set an example for the flock (1 Peter 5.3) by engaging in the spiritual activities above and they should also encourage others to do the same. They and all believers should be the servant of all (Matthew 20.26-27; Mark 9.35; Luke 22.26).

Negativity Factor

Very few believers understand the Negativity Factor. Understanding of this is the key to gaining humility and ridding oneself of pride.

Everyone is conceived and born in sin and goes astray from birth (Psalm 51.5; 58.3). We struggle with sin our entire lives even after we are born from above (Galatians 5.17). It is our sin nature and our submission to it that hinders the work that God seeks to do through us. This is the Negativity Factor. We do not add to the work of God in any way, we only hinder it. God performs great works through us in spite of us. We hinder His work we do not help it. The only thing we can do is lessen our Negativity Factor by obeying God every second of every day of our lives.

Christians who think they help God perform good deeds or great works are delusional. We can never help God. All we can do is empty ourselves of all of our desires and make ourselves available to Him every day. We must daily do what John the Baptist said about Jesus the Messiah, “He must increase, but I must decrease” (John 3.30). The more we rid ourselves of us the more God can work through us for His glory.

The way to diminish ourselves is to spend every spare moment we have in prayer, worshipping God, Bible reading, study, memorization and meditation, fellowship with the brethren, sharing the Gospel and making disciples. Every minute we spend enjoying the pleasures of the world – watching TV, movies and sports, shopping, partying, reading meaningless fiction books, eating pleasure foods, hobbies, worrying over investments – is a minute wasted forever. Everyone needs down time, recreation and relaxation, but there are good ways of getting R&R and bad ways. Make sure your methods of R&R are honoring to the Lord and do not over do it. Three of the best forms of relaxation are praying, reading the Bible and listening to hymns. When you need to chill out pray, read the Bible and or listen to hymns. If these activities do not relax and energize you something is wrong.



HOW TO BE HUMBLE

How to be Humble shows you how you can be humble and stay humble. YAHWEH commands all believers in YAHSHUA Messiah to be humble so He can use us for His glory.

To learn how to be humble and to bring glory to YAHWEH and YAHSHUA order your copy of *How to be Humble*. Email the DOV Book Shoppe – dovbooks@yahoo.com

APPENDIX F

MINISTRIES OF THE CHURCH

Below are some ministries that pastors may wish to consider:

1. Home/church Bible studies.
2. Home/church prayer meetings and daily prayer at lunch.
3. Saturday night Bible study for the youth and adults.
4. Personalized home Bible studies. (A teacher holds a personal Bible study for a single person, couple, family or a small group.)
5. Sunday school classes teaching the Bible book-by-book.
6. Program to teach fathers how to conduct family devotions.
7. Discipleship program.
8. Memorization club.
9. Bible reading club. (Read a book and discuss it.)
10. Weekly Bible study for all pastors, deacons and Bible teachers.
11. New member's class on basic Bible doctrines.
12. A class on health and diet.
13. Class for members to determine what their spiritual gifts are.
14. A Bible college for members and others. (It does not need to be accredited. The pastors and qualified Bible teachers teach classes on specific books of the Bible, O.T. and N.T. survey, Bible doctrine, hermeneutics, homeletics, Church history, eschatology, etc.).
15. Bible study correspondence course.

16. Evangelism class.
17. Evangelism programs.
18. Community outreach programs.
19. Send out missionaries and support those in the field.
20. Compassion ministry for church members and others.
21. Food bank. (For church members and the poor.)
22. Day-care ministry for members.
23. Homeschooling program for parents to home school their children.
24. Regular dinner parties. (Pastors, deacons and Bible teachers invite members of the church to their home for dinner/fellowship. The host should take time to share his testimony and listen to the testimonies of his guests. He should get to know them, and ask them if they need help in their spiritual growth or in their daily lives.)
25. Night of preaching. (Men called to be pastors preach for 20 to 30 minutes. Three or more men preach. It can be a powerful evangelistic tool.)

Compassion Ministry

There are dozens of things a church can do to help the members of the church and the unsaved in the community. Here are just a few ideas for the Compassion Ministry:

1. Free gardening services. The church should have a professional gardener head this ministry up.
2. Recycling ministry.
3. Hauling stuff to the dump that the trash disposal company does not handle.
4. Free handyman services.
5. Free auto repair services if the church has a professional mechanic. It would be limited to basic repairs and maintenance.
6. Free grocery shopping services.
7. Free ride services.

8. Free delivery service. Church will make deliveries to and for people. (No pick up deliveries of alcohol and tobacco.)
9. Prepared meals for members who cannot cook due to age, injury or sickness.
10. Day-care ministry.
11. House sitting services.
12. Alzheimer sitting services.
13. Food bank and co-op.
14. Thrift shop.
15. Community garden and orchard.
16. Training parents how to home school their children and providing help for parents who work. Volunteers can home school children whose parents cannot do it full time.
17. Disaster preparedness.

To facilitate the compassion ministry a qualified man should be made director. His duties will include having church members sign up to do volunteer work and to be ministered to. He will determine who can pay for all or part of the services and who should be paid for performing the services (unemployed, those who need extra income). He will also be responsible for collecting donations for the ministry.

The director also needs to have a pamphlet printed and made available to the members of the church listing all of the ministries and services the church offers with the name, phone numbers and emails of the ministry director and any assistants he may have.

The ministries and services should also be made available to the community. Making them available to non-church members is an excellent way for the church to evangelize the community.

Disaster Preparedness

One member should be placed in charge of the Disaster Preparedness program. If no one in the church has experience in DP one member should volunteer to be trained so he can run it.

Other members should also volunteer to be trained so they can assist him. Every member who volunteers to be part of the DP program should begin with a one month supply of food and water along with a first aid kit and basic DP tools (flashlights, matches, candles, oil lamps, portable gas stove, trash bags, TP, battery powered radios). Those who wanted to go beyond one month should be shown how to store rations for several months or years.

The church should give careful consideration to storing food, water and DP supplies for members who do not want to do so and for the community. The food can be given to needy members and community poor through the church food bank before expiration dates come due.

The church should consider purchasing a generator and needed diesel, gas or alcohol to run it in case of a disaster. This can be vitally important in a crisis that last more than a few days. If your church has a generator it can cook warm meals for members and people in the community. It can also offer shelter for those who have to abandon their homes due to lack of power and utilities.

Other things a church should consider are purchasing a short wave radio transmitter and a CB radio to enable it to communicate with others in case radio, television and the Internet go down.

Disaster Preparedness is an excellent way of winning souls. When Christians in a community are the first responders in an emergency it has a great impact on how the unsaved view them. People are much more responsive to the Gospel when the bearers of Good News also help them with their physical needs.

APPENDIX G

SPIRITUAL SUCCESS

Most pastors want to be successful. They want to have a big church with several ministries to help the members of their congregation. Some even want to have a radio or television ministry. There is nothing wrong in this, yet that is not success. Spiritual success does **not** consist of numbers, money, buildings, ministries, fame and notoriety. Most churches that have those things are spiritual failures.

Spiritual success consists of:

1. Making certain that every member of your congregation is truly born from above. If you cannot spend time with every member of your flock to listen to their testimony and be assured they are saved you need to train men to help you (Hebrews 13.17).
2. Feeding every member of your flock with the Word and helping them grow to spiritual maturity (Acts 6.4; Ephesians 4.11-16; 1 Peter 5.2).
3. Setting up a Scripture reading, studying, memorization and meditation program for every member and helping them stay on it (Appendix C).
4. Meeting the physical needs of every member of your congregation (Acts 6.1-3; Romans 12.7; 1 John 3.16-18).
5. Getting every member involved in ministry. Determine what gifts each member has and find a way for them to use them. The more members there are involved in

ministry the greater impact the church will have on the community (Romans 12.7-8; 1 Corinthians 12.7-10).

6. Watching over the flock. When a member or regular attendee does not attend a Sunday morning service call and tell him that you missed him. Gently determine why he skipped and make him understand he is an important member. Explain to him that the whole body suffers when just one member is missing. Train men to help you if you have a large church. When the member is a woman have your wife or a female member of your congregation make the call (Hebrews 13.17).
7. *Discipling* all husbands so they can *disciple* their wives and children (Deuteronomy 6.6-7).
8. *Discipling* faithful men called to be pastors (2 Timothy 2.2).
9. Having your wife or spiritually mature women in your congregation *disciple* mothers so they can *disciple* their children (Proverbs 1.8; 6.20; 31.26).
10. Showing hospitality to every member of your flock by inviting them to dinner on a regular basis (weekly, bi-weekly or once a month). The deacons, Bible teachers and other men in your flock can help you (Romans 12.13; 1 Timothy 3.2; Titus 1.8) as well as all members of your flock (1 Timothy 5.10; Hebrews 13.2; 1 Peter 4.9).
11. Taking the Gospel to every home and person in your city, and *discipling* those who believe in Jesus Christ (Matthew 28.19-20).
12. Sending out missionaries to make *disciples* of all nations (Matthew 28.19-20) and assisting missionaries in their work (3 John 5-8).

APPENDIX H

RELIGION: THE NAVIGATOR

Dawson Trotman clambered back into a motorboat one day last week after two hours of waterskiing on Schroon Lake, N.Y. He was dog-tired, but before he settled down he asked one of the two girls in the boat, Allene Beck, if she could swim; when she shook her head, he traded places with her so she would be in a safer spot. Minutes later the speeding boat bounced on a wave, and both of them, the 50-year-old man and the girl, shot into the water. He swam to her and held her head above water until the boat could circle back and she was hauled aboard. But as hands reached down to seize Trotman's hand, he sank out of sight.

So died Dawson Trotman, "the Navigator," light and power of a movement that echoes the words of the Scriptures around the world. Billy Graham interrupted his evangelist crusade in Oklahoma City to "preach his funeral" at Colorado Springs, Colo., and devoted his week's Hour of Decision broadcast to him. Radio Preacher Charles E. Fuller did the same with his Old Fashioned Revival Hour.

The Sailor & the Cop. At 18, Los Angeles-born Daws Trotman, as he later recounted, "gambled and was very deep in the world." He was courting a girl named Lila, as religious as she was pretty, and she took him with her to some church meetings. At the second meeting Dawson was the only one there who had memorized six Bible verses that had been assigned at the first meeting. The same thing happened at the third meeting. The following week he was "taken of the Lord," converted to evangelistic Christianity, and welcomed to membership in the interdenominational Church of the Open Door in Los Angeles.

Memorizing the Bible was the key to conversion, as Trotman saw it, so he handed out scores of Scriptures to youth groups he organized. One day in 1934 a mother asked him to look up her son, a sailor on a ship off Long Beach. Sitting in his old car by the waterfront, Trotman quoted the Bible to the boy until a policeman grew suspicious. A few minutes later, Trotman had talked the cop into joining him and the sailor in a session of prayer. The sailor said: "I'd give my right arm if I could do what you just did." Dawson challenged him to try.

It was the beginning of a movement that Trotman called the Navigators, for its nautical origins. For that sailor converted a friend with the technique he had learned from Dawson Trotman, and that convert in turn convinced another. Soon Navigators were spread across the seven seas. At one point during the war there were Navigators in more than 1,000 U.S. Navy ships and stations.

B Rations. Evangelist Graham urged Daws Trotman to join his Fort Worth crusade in 1951, and asked him how to keep people to their religious conviction once they had made their "decisions" and signed their pledge cards. Navigator Trotman organized the system of Biblical instruction courses – "B Rations" (for Bible) of verses to be memorized. Graham and his team have used them ever since as the core of their system for following up Graham "converts" (Time, Oct. 25, 1954).

In 1953 Trotman bought a large, luxurious ranch at Colorado Springs and turned it into a national headquarters and free vacation spot for Navigators. But Daws Trotman did not rest; he got up early to pray and read and stayed up late to talk to would-be converts, until a heart ailment several years ago forced him to slow down and take more than his customary five hours' sleep.

Last week Billy Graham summed up what many Christians in many places of the world were saying about Daws Trotman. "I think Daws had personally touched more lives than anybody that I have ever known," said he. "He lived to save others." Said a Navigator, "His death was just the way he would have planned it." (Time, 7.02.1956) www.time.com/time/magazine/article/0,9171,891299,00.html

Dawson Trotman biography

Dawson Trotman (March 25, 1906–June 18, 1956) was an evangelist, crusader and founder of The Navigators.

Trotman founded The Navigators in 1933 and through this worldwide Christian organization supported various Christian ideals: maintaining the basic disciplines of the Christ-centered Spirit-filled life, abiding in the Word of God, the importance of personal follow-up, one-on-one discipleship training, and principles for multiplying Christian disciples, laborers, and equippers around the world. In rescuing another person from drowning in Schroon Lake, New York, he lost his own life on June 18, 1956.

Dr. Billy Graham said: “I think Daws has personally touched more lives than anybody I have ever known.” His work and writings were instrumental in the creation of the Campus Outreach ministry, which focuses on discipleship as a method of building up the community of Christians on college campuses.

Trotman worked with many other evangelicals of his day, including Henrietta Mears, Jim Rayburn, Charles E. Fuller, and Dick Hillis. Lorne Sanny succeeded him as the head of The Navigators.

Trotman married Lila Mae Clayton on July 3, 1932. Lila Trotman died on October 27, 2005, at the age of 90. They had four children.



Navigator.org

APPENDIX I

BORN TO REPRODUCE

by Dawson E. Trotman
(navbooklets-no 6)

And the things that thou hast heard of Me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also (2 Timothy 2:2).

Foreword

In the summer of 1955 it was my privilege to meet Dawson Trotman, director of The Navigators, for the first time. My heart was thrilled not only with his vision of soulwinning but also with the manner in which God had used this man to promote a method of first winning an individual, then teaching him how to win and teach others, multiplying the ministry in this manner, supplementing the mass approach.

Through the years I have met Navigators who were trained by either Dawson Trotman or one of his men and I have usually found them to be people with a passion for souls, a good knowledge of the Word and something that made them stand out as individual Christians.

From the day when I met Dawson Trotman, our friendship and fellowship grew by leaps and bounds. We spent many hours together on various occasions, and almost overnight a David-Jonathan love grew.

As I came to know this man better, I soon discovered the secret of his power. Early in his Christian life, he and another young man covenanted together to meet for prayer every

morning for six weeks in order to find God's will in a certain matter. This spirit and practice of devotion was a rule of his life. He rose early to pray and read God's Word. Without this devotion to God he could not have been so successful in his service.

The unselfishness of Mr. Trotman could be seen on every hand. There was no trying on his part to hoard information or knowledge that he had gained in 22 years of experience, but rather there was a willingness to share and to cooperate with us in producing a much more thorough follow-up system for the Back to the Bible Broadcast.

The Back to the Bible Broadcast Home Study Course, a follow-up method for young Christians, was the result. Different ones in the organization gave many hours of their time in helping to produce this course, and Mr. Trotman himself supervised every phase of it.

Possibly one of the last major accomplishments of this man was his untiring work in making this Bible course a reality. It was a pooling of both experience and knowledge which we believe will bear much fruit.

Mr. Trotman went to be with the Lord June 18, 1956. In rescuing another person from drowning in Schroon Lake, New York, he lost his own life. How characteristic this was of his lifelong ministry! One man summed it up in these words: "I think Daws has personally touched more lives than anybody I have ever known."

The work of The Navigators continues under able leadership. It was solidly built on the principle of one person training another instead of one person being the preacher of all.

My own life is dedicated to a greater effort than ever before to follow persistently this great principle of Bible memory work and person-to-person evangelism.

These messages were given by Mr. Trotman at a Back to the Bible Broadcast conference in Lincoln, Nebraska, and have been condensed for use in this booklet.

Theodore H. Epp

Converted through prayer and Scripture memorization

Twenty years of my life were lived on the wrong side of the cross, and twenty-nine and a half were lived on this side with Christ. I can honestly say that the joy and pleasure I experienced in any week or month of these 29 years outweighs all the joy and pleasure that I could squeeze out of those first twenty.

As a little boy I began trying to get some of the world's pleasure. I remember the first time I wanted something that I shouldn't have had. My father had left home, and Mother was working at Woolworth's for our living. She used to put her dimes in a little bank on her dresser. Many a time I looked at that bank but could think of no way to get those dimes out. As I watched her drop dimes in from time to time, I decided that she could not tell if one was gone. So one day I put tins in the slot, and all of a sudden the dimes dropped out. I put them all back but one.

I went down to a store and bought ten pieces of round, chocolate-covered marshmallow candy, each of which had a little lead prize inside. I ate all ten pieces, though I did not know what to do with the ten prizes, because Mother would see them and ask me where I got them. I became sick from eating so much candy, but I also felt sick at heart to think that I had taken a dime from Mother.

How I wish I had been caught then! I was not caught until ten years later, when I was twenty years of age. During my teens I robbed my employer of hundreds of dollars. I had been the president of the student body of the high school and valedictorian of the graduating class. My subject was "Morality versus Legality," yet I was stealing from the school funds. Such is the deceit of the human heart. Down in the heart of each person there is a twofold desire – a desire for happiness and a desire to be somebody and do something. Sometimes we give serious thought to these matters.

I tried to find a way out of my difficulties. I joined the Boy Scouts and took the oath to be “trustworthy, loyal, helpful, friendly, courteous, etc.” I put on a Scout uniform, and I felt like a new man. But it was all on the outside. Nothing happened to change me for the better. At 14 I joined the church, but I had not met Christ. At the age of 17 I began going with a Christian girl. She asked me to go to a young people’s meeting. I went with her and kept on going until I became president of the young people’s society. Then on high school graduation night I ditched that Christian girl and went out with a beautiful unsaved girl.

The path of sin

After that I thought, “I just can’t do what is right. It’s not in me to be good. I guess I’m one of those guys who just can’t win.” It seemed that the longer I lived, the weaker I became and the more I traveled downhill. Finally I gave up trying. I had not touched a drop of liquor until that time, but just a week after I graduated from high school I went out and got drunk at the suggestion of some of my acquaintances. They told me I would have fun. What a lie!

I woke up the next day at two o’clock in the afternoon. My suit was ruined, my vest was gone, my mind was blank and I did not know where I had been.

You would think that would have been enough, but it was only the beginning. In my twentieth year I was picked up four times and hauled away in an ambulance. Four times the police were after me. Two months after I had reached my twentieth birthday I was arrested and was on my way to jail. Mother was at home sick in bed with cancer. She must have had a premonition of this, for she had said to me that very week, “Son, you’re breaking my heart. I’m praying for you, but you know, I’m afraid if I ever hear that you are in jail, I’ll die. It will kill me.”

On the way to jail, though I was under the influence of liquor, I did what any man does when he gets into trouble – I

cried out to God. I said, “O God, if You will get me out of this mess tonight, if You will keep me out of jail, I’ll do whatever you want me to.”

It frightened me as I said that, because just one month before, I was nearly drowned in a lake. The girl with whom I was swimming across the lake could not make it. I had a bad heart, and I was hardly able to make it myself. She yelled, and I grabbed her, and we both went down under the water. I just said, “God, save me! I’ll do what You want!” We bobbed up, and a couple coming along in a boat (they had not seen us until that moment) pulled us out.

I had forgotten that promise I made to God, but this time I thought, “God, if You will save me this time, I will do what You want.”

That big policeman had me by the arm, and he was angry because I had done something he rightfully hated. But the moment I cried, he looked down at me and said, “Do you like this kind of a life?”

I said, “Sir, I hate it!”

He took me to a park and made me stay there three hours, until I sobered up. Then he let me go with a promise to do better.

The beginning of better things

That took place on Friday night, and Sunday evening I went to church. This was in a little town of 5,000 people, where there were four churches, with young people's groups in all of them. And though there were some young fellows my age among them, still there was not one whom God could put His hand on and say, “I’ve got a job for you.” There was not one fellow whom God could guide to Dawson Trotman to tell him the Gospel story.

God picked out a couple of schoolteachers, Miss Mills and Miss Thomas, to have a large part in my coming to Christ. Miss Mills was a general science teacher, and I was one of her

problem pupils. She wrote my name on her prayer list and prayed for me every day for six solid years.

On the Friday night I was arrested, she was home with Miss Thomas, looking up verses in the Bible, trying to find ten on the subject of salvation which they could give to the young people to memorize. Little did she know that the boy for whom she had been praying for six years was going to memorize those verses. When Sunday came along, I decided to go to young people's meeting. The pool hall where I played billiards and gambled was about half a block from the church. That evening I looked around to make sure none of the pool-hall boys were looking, and I sneaked down to the church and joined in the young people's service.

A young couple who knew me from high school days was standing in the entrance to the church. They recognized me and gave me a warm, kindly greeting. "We're starting a contest tonight," they told me.

"Be on my side," said Johnny, and Alice said, "You be on my side." I went on Alice's side. She gave me a piece of paper and said, "Now, you hang onto this."

Then we went inside, and the young people had the usual preliminaries and service. I do not remember what was said, except that they discussed a party and a contest in which the points were to be given for various things, among them the memorization of Scripture.

"What do I do with this piece of paper?" I asked.

Alice said, "Do you see those numbers? They indicate the chapter and verse in the Bible. When you learn a verse, you get five points – 10 verses, 50 points."

I went home and dug out my little Testament, and in the course of a week I learned all ten verses. Here I was, an unsaved fellow, learning, "*For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God*" (Romans 3:23); "*For the wages of sin is death...*" (Romans 6:23); "*And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment*" (Hebrews 9:27); "*Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth My Word, and believeth on Him that sent Me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto*

life” (John 5:24). John 1:12 was also in that group: “*But as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God...*”

My side was ahead on the following Sunday because of my 50 points, and Alice came around and gave me ten more verses. Miss Mills and Miss Thomas had thought that if anybody memorized the first ten verses, there should be ten more; and this second ten should be for new Christians, to help them live the Christian life. How they prayed that first week for me!

In the new group of ten verses were these: “*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new*” (2 Corinthians 5:17); “*But the Lord is faithful, who shall stablish you, and keep you from evil*” (2 Thessalonians 3:3) “*If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness*” (1 John 1:9).

I went back the following Sunday and got another 50 points for the Reds, The Reds were ahead of the Blues, and I helped put them there. We won the contest.

God’s work in a soul

One unforgettable event resulted from that. During the third week of my renewed interest in young people’s meetings I was on my way to work with these 20 verses of Scripture stored away in my memory. I walked along, minding my own business, with my lunch pail in my hand. I was back in my sin. My promise to God, made that night when the policeman was taking me to jail, did not change my life. Going to young people’s meeting on Sunday did not change me either. I was the same guy. I was spending Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday nights at the taverns and beer joints, and going to church on Sunday and feeling, “Well’ I’m a little better. I guess a little of this good won’t hurt me after all.”

But Miss Mills was praying, and the Word of God was working; and all of a sudden that morning, as I walked along, the Holy Spirit brought one of those verses to my mind: “*Verily, verily, I say unto you, he that heareth My Word, and believeth on Him that sent Me, hath everlasting life...*” (John 5:24).

Those words “hath everlasting life” stuck in my mind. I said, “O God, that’s wonderful – everlasting life!” I pulled my little Testament out of my pocket and looked it up, and sure enough, there it was – “*...hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.*”

There for the first time I remember praying, after I had grown to be a man, when I was not in trouble with the police or something like that. I said, “O God, whatever this means, I want to have it.” And just like that the Holy Spirit brought John 1:12 to my mind: “But as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God...” I then looked up that verse, and there it was, just as I remembered it. “O God,” I said, “whatever it means to receive Jesus, I do it right now.” That was my new birth.

Do you know how I know? I did not know the next verse, which tells of the new birth – “*But as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on His Name: which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God*” (John 1:12-13) – but a distinct change had taken place. I could no longer enjoy the dirty stories or taking of the Lord’s Name in vain. I used to think it was fun to use bad language when I lost my temper, but that grew distasteful to me. When I cried to God for help, the Holy Spirit brought one of the 20 verses to my mind. “*If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins...*” So I said, “Okay, God, forgive me.”

My Bible teaches that if any man can bridle his tongue, he can bridle his whole body. That was one of the first lessons I learned at the beginning of the Christian life. That is one of the reasons why I love to see a brand-new Christian begin to get the Word of God down into his heart. If it had not been for

those 20 verses, I would have been back in the dance hall and the beer joints.

Immediately after my conversion I began learning verses, and I learned one a day for the first three years. In those years I learned my first thousand verses.

My preacher said to me when I went to him for help in leading others to Christ, "I'll tell you something, lad. There is an answer in the Bible for every excuse that any man can give for not coming to Christ." I believed him. Then I went alone to prayer and said, "God, if there is an answer to any man's excuse, I promise You I will never be caught on the same excuse twice."

That is a little promise to make, but it changed the course of my life. After all, there are only so many excuses. This was the seed from which the Navigator work started and grew.

Asking God for big things

One day I said to my second daughter, when she was about seven, "Now, honey, if you get all that work done by Friday night, I'll see that you get a pony ride."

Then I happened to hear Bruce, who was nine, whisper to her, "You may not get it. He promised me one once that I didn't get."

I had made Bruce that promise but had forgotten about it, and he had not come around to claim it. When I overheard him say to his sister, "It may not work, because it didn't work with me," he got his pony ride within 24 hours. I would not feel very good toward the man who promised his child something and then refused to give it to him.

God says in His Book, "*...what man is there of you, whom if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask Him?*" (Matthew 7:9-11).

In line with this read what God promises in Jeremiah 33:3: *“Call unto Me, and I will answer thee, and show thee great and mighty things, which thou knowest not.”* In substance this particular verse says that if you will ask God for something big, He will answer; and He will show you things that you have not even imagined.

For those who might say, “Well, that might have been good back there, but how about in this day and age?” there is this corresponding verse in the New Testament: *“Now unto Him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us”* (Ephesians 3:20).

Every person who knows Jesus Christ has a hookup with heaven.

When you say, “Father in heaven,” you have addressed God the Father, the Maker of the universe, the One who holds the worlds in His hands. What did you ask for? Did you ask for peanuts, or toys? Or did you ask for continents? It is a tragedy when we think of the little things we ask of an Almighty God. When He says, “You call unto Me, and I will answer you, and show you great and mighty things which you know not,” we should believe Him to mean what He says.

A six week prayer meeting

I asked a friend of mine, whom I will call Dick, if he would join me in praying on the basis of that great promise. He agreed to. We figured that we were not going to take any chances on anything. We examined some verses of Scripture which dealt with importunity in prayer. We read that the Lord got up in the early morning and went out into a solitary place (Mark 1:35), so we decided to meet every morning up in the hills, where we would be away from noises and distractions. We agreed to meet with God from five until seven o'clock each morning of the week, including Sundays.

Dick was a plumber and I was a truck driver, and we had to be in another city ready to go to work by eight o'clock. We

agreed to meet two weeks, five weeks, ten weeks – the whole year, if necessary; but we were not going to quit until somehow down in our hearts we could say to God, “We believe You’ve heard us; we believe You’re going to give us what we’ve asked for.”

We decided to ask first for the things that we were doing and for the people around us and to keep our hearts open, so that God could widen our interests to the fullest extent.

We were challenged by Acts 1:8: “...ye shall be witnesses unto Me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.” We were going to let God lead us by His Holy Spirit to ask for the biggest things possible.

The beginning of God’s working

God had already worked in our home town. I had taken a Sunday school class of six boys, though I had been a Christian for only a short time. The superintendent of the Sunday school said to me before I had my first session, “We’re going to give you this Sunday school class, and we’re going to pray for you, because this class has killed off two teachers already.”

“What do you mean?” I asked.

“Well,” he said, “the two teachers have already given up; they could not get these boys to listen.” I had prayed about that, and the Lord had given me the hearts of three of these kids.

On the first Sunday they did not listen, and I prayed to the Lord about it. I said, “Lord, I had my lesson prepared, and those boys didn’t listen. How am I going to get them? You made little boys. Give me some idea.”

He gave me an idea. I went down to see George, who was the ringleader. I saw him alone, and I learned something right there. A boy is different when you get him alone. George was not blowing any beans when I looked him in the eye. I said, “George” (I had read him Mark 4, where it says that the sower tried to sow the seed, and the devil snatched it away), “you

know, the devil didn't have to be in Sunday school last Sunday. He just used you. While I was trying to give those other boys the Word, you were drawing their attention away. Those five other boys failed to hear what God wanted them to hear because of you."

"Oh," he said, "what'll I do?" Now this is not good theology, but I told him, "You come back next Sunday and be a good boy and act like an angel, and maybe the Lord will forgive you. The better angel you are, the more He's likely to forgive you."

Although I was not very well versed in theology in those days, it worked! The class listened, and George was saved, and so were Jimmie and his other buddies. We did not get through our lessons. We found that we had to meet in the middle of the week, and that little class of six boys grew to where it was 225 boys who had accepted the Lord. The Sunday school grew from 100 to 400.

Dick and I had already seen this victory, and he was helping me with the boys. We began praying up there in the hills for each of these boys by name.

Since we had calls from other towns – San Pedro, Long Beach, Glendale and Pasadena – to come over and help them because of our work with the boys, we began to pray for those cities also. We prayed for Pasadena and for Redondo Beach; as the weeks rolled on, we found ourselves praying for Los Angeles, San Francisco, Sacramento and San Diego. When we began these morning prayer meetings, it seemed a big thing to pray for those towns, but soon it did not seem any bigger to pray that God would use us in those places.

Enlarged praying

About the fourth week I said, "Dick, would you be willing to pray that God would use us in every state in the United States?"

"Well, He's big enough," Dick said.

So we made a list of 48 states, and we prayed. Morning after morning in these little prayer meetings we would look at our list and ask God to use us and other young fellows in Washington, in Oregon, in California, and in all the other states of the Union. Five weeks went by, and we did not miss a morning. We met at four o'clock on Sunday morning and spent three hours in prayer. During the sixth week the Lord put it on our hearts to get a map of the world, and we took it up to our little cave in the hill. We began to put our fingers on Germany, France and Italy. We put them on Turkey and Greece. I remember looking at one little island near China – you had to look close to see what it was – and we prayed that God would use us in the lives of men on Formosa.

We could not have prayed like that the first week. I don't think that time has much to do with whether God hears you or not; but I do believe that time has something to do with whether or not your faith is built up as you pray and ask. I don't believe that God will ever give much to those who have their little conscience-easer prayers in the morning and evening. If you cannot take 1/48th of your day to be alone with your mighty God and King, I rather doubt that He is going to do very much through you.

Soulwinning in the home

My wife and I took Isaiah 60:11, “...*thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night...*” as the motto for our home. We were married on Sunday, and we opened our home on Wednesday. It was not long until the first sailor accepted the Lord. Men from every one of the 48 states have since then found the Lord in our home. There was a period of six months when we seldom ate breakfast or our evening meal alone, because sailors were there. I believe with all my heart that one of the greatest soul-saving stations in the world is the home.

Work in Formosa

Five years ago I went over to Formosa as a representative of The Navigators and got together all the ministers in the city of Taipei. There were nine churches in that city then. I met for a week with the pastors of those churches and other pastors who came in from some of the towns around, explaining how our Navigator plans worked in the Navy and Army. We inaugurated this plan in Formosa, began to work with Dick Hillis, and took charge of the follow-up.

Today there are 90 churches in Taipei. Over a sixth of a million converts, spiritually five years old or less, have finished at least one Navigator Bible study and parts of the Topical Memory System, and they have led another hundred thousand to Christ. We have 27 full-time Chinese secretaries to handle the work we are doing with both young and old in Formosa. Similar work is carried on in Okinawa, Hong Kong, Saigon, the Philippines and Korea.

Such soulwinning starts in this way: First, you have to believe the Book, then you must ask, and keep on asking. Before you can touch people in 48 states, you have to touch them in one state. And before you can touch them in one state, you must touch them in one city. And before you can touch them in one city, you must be able to touch them on one street. Any person who knows how to be saved and is saved has enough knowledge, if imparted to another, to reach that one for Christ.

Fear in soulwinning

Sometimes I am almost afraid to ask the Lord to give me a soul, because I know that if I ask Him, I am going to have to get busy. I have been a Christian for 29 years, and it still frightens me to talk to a man about his need of salvation.

Having that fear after so many years of doing personal work used to bother me. Suddenly I realized that such fear was

only a little red light going on and off to remind me that it was "...not by might, nor by power, but by My Spirit, saith the Lord..." You never get to the place where you can do it on your own. You need Him.

I made such a request one day; then I began to look for a man. I was driving an old Model T at that time; and as I rode along, I saw a man hitchhiking on a six-lane highway. I kept my eyes straight ahead and watched the red signal light at which I had to stop. Looking at the fellow out of the corner of my eye, I saw that he looked big and tough, so I decided that he was the wrong one. As I waited for that red light to change, I don't know what happened to it, but it was on for a long time, it seemed. I thought the man had gone back to the curb, but when I looked at him, he was looking right at me. Inviting him in, I lost no time in getting a Gospel tract into his hand. He read it through and then handed it back to me.

"What did you think of it?" I asked.

He replied, "I think it's wonderful."

I was startled at his answer and said, "Oh, you're a Christian!"

"No," he answered, "I'm not a Christian. I've been going to some tent meetings down this way every night for two weeks, and I can't get through. I have gone down to the front every night, but I can't get through."

"Through what?" I asked.

He answered, "Isn't there something to get through?"

I pulled over, stopped, and said, "Buddy, I've got news for you. Somebody already got through." All he needed was the simple Gospel instead of being told to do something, and he accepted Christ.

Do you know what I had been doing? I saw this rough character, and I thought, "He won't repent. He won't believe." That was not my business. I have no right to decide for any other man whether or not he will accept the Lord. My business is to tell him the story and let him decide.

We need to reach neighbors and relatives

“So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God” (Romans 14:12). We must all appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ to give an account of the deeds done in the body, whether they be good or bad (2 Corinthians 5:10). And I want to tell you that to him that knoweth to do good and doeth it not, it is sin (James 4:17). I do not know of any greater sin than to let a man or woman next door to you go to Hell. You have the pardon written right out in the Book; but they have never seen it, and you have not told them.

I read over in Proverbs, *“If thou forbear to deliver them that are drawn unto death, and those that are ready to be slain; If thou sayest, Behold, we knew it not; doth not He that pondereth the heart consider it? and He that keepeth thy soul, doth not He know it? and shall not He render to every man according to his works?”* (Proverbs 24:11-12).

When I first came to know the Lord, I talked to my brother about the Savior. He laughed at me and said, “I’m not interested. Don’t talk to me any more.” I do not talk to a man when he tells me not to, but I talk to the Lord.

Three years later I said, “Roland, could I talk to you for a moment about Christ?”

He said yes, and smiled a bit. The Lord had just brought him to Himself. He had seen some things that had touched his heart. Three weeks later headlines in the Los Angeles Examiner read, “Hero Gives Life To Save Girl.” How do you think I felt when I found out that my own brother was gone? What if I had not spoken to him about Christ?

The very first trip I ever took on United Airlines was on a 12-passenger Boeing plane. It was about a three-hour trip, and I wanted to witness for Christ, but it was not until the last half hour that I got up the nerve to talk to the stewardess. She said, “Do you know what? I’ve never heard this story before.”

She was a church member, but she did not know that Christ died for her. She thanked me for speaking to her about her need of salvation. Evelyn Sandino accepted the Lord just as we came into Burbank.

Three weeks later while riding on a train, I picked up a newspaper and read: "United Airliner Crashes in Utah Mountains 40 Miles From Town." Evelyn's picture was there. She was the stewardess on that ill-fated plane. We do not know how soon a person may die.

I do not know what it is going to take to wake up God's people to the fact that we must get this message out now. As I look back over the past 29 years and see how God has taken a few little things and made big things out of them, I covet the same for all of God's people.

Why men lose out with God

I told you that Dick prayed with me in those early days. Do you know what he said to me about three years ago? "I've got my seventh church, and I don't have one person in my church who is down to business for Jesus Christ; and I don't know anybody I've had in the past six months who has been down to business in the manner you describe."

Then he added, "Maybe it's because I never got down to business." No "maybe" about that!

I remembered the one event that turned the course of his life. It happened while we lived in Long Beach. The Long Beach Municipal Band used to play for all of the people who came to the seashore on Sunday afternoons. The Fishermen's Club, of which Dick and I were members, had the right to come in at the close of the band program and announce that we were going to preach the Gospel. About ten percent of the audience would stay, and then we boys would get up and give our testimonies. It was in June, just the time when the swimming was best. We had to decide whether or not we would give our Sunday afternoons to that or to the Lord's

work. Both Dick and I made the decision that we would go to the band shell.

A couple of weeks after we stopped praying together, Dick did not show up at the band shell. The following Sunday it was the same story; and as I rode home that day after giving my testimony, I passed a car in which were Dick and his girl friend in their bathing suits. It is possible for some Christians to do that and get away with it; but I do not think it was possible for Dick, because he had made a covenant with God.

I did not say anything to him, and he did not know that I had seen them; so when I met him the next Tuesday evening at Fishermen's Club, I gave him a little piece of paper with Isaiah 58:13-14 written on it. "Don't look this up now," I said to Dick, "but you go and get Nancy. Then read these verses together and pray about them. Now, promise me you won't read this by yourself." He gave me his word.

I left the church and went on out to catch the bus, but as I waited for one to come along, I became very thirsty and decided to go back into the basement of the church for a drink of water. There I found Dick reading by the light of a match the paper which I had given him. He had broken his promise.

Here are the verses which I wanted Dick and Nancy to read: "*If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on My holy day; and call the sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honourable; and shalt honour Him, not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking thine own words; then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord; and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth, and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father: for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it*" (Isaiah 58:13-14).

I gave it to him to make him face the fact that maybe it was not the best thing for him to be going swimming instead of witnessing for Christ on the Lord's Day, but he did not come back to the band shell.

God has a work for you

Suppose Dick had taken that word of exhortation and asked the Lord's forgiveness. Is it possible that God would have let him zoom right ahead on His plan? It is not only possible; it is probable.

"If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness" (1 John 1:9). I believe that verse will hold right down to the last minute that you take a breath. If you have drifted from the Lord and from His will for you, return now. If you will do it, I believe He will permit you to go ahead in His plan for you.

Born to reproduce

A few years ago, while visiting Edinburgh, Scotland, I stood on High Street just down from the castle. As I stood there, I saw a father and a mother coming toward me pushing a baby carriage. They looked very happy, were well dressed and apparently were well-to-do. I tried to catch a glimpse of the baby as they passed and, seeing my interest, they stopped to let me look at the little, pink-cheeked member of their family.

I watched them for a little while as they walked on and thought how beautiful it is that God permits a man to choose one woman who seems the most beautiful and lovely to him, and she chooses him out of all the men whom she has ever known. Then they separate themselves to one another, and God in His plan gives them the means of reproduction! It is a wonderful thing that a little child should be born into their family, having some of the father's characteristics and some of the mother's, some of his looks and some of hers. Each sees in that baby a reflection of the one whom he or she loves.

Seeing that little one made me feel homesick for my own children whom I dearly love and whose faces I had not seen for some time. As I continued to stand there I saw another

baby carriage, or perambulator as they call it over there, coming in my direction. It was a secondhand affair and very wobbly. Obviously the father and mother were poor. Both were dressed poorly and plainly, but when I indicated my interest in seeing their baby, they stopped and with the same pride as the other parents let me view their little, pink-cheeked, beautiful-eyed child.

I thought as these went on their way, “God gave this little baby whose parents are poor everything that He gave the other. It has five little fingers on each hand, a little mouth and two eyes. Properly cared for, those little hands may someday be the hands of an artist or a musician.”

Then this other thought came to me, “Isn’t it wonderful that God did not select the wealthy and the educated and say, ‘You can have children,’ and to the poor and uneducated say, ‘You cannot.’ Everyone on earth has that privilege.”

The first order ever given to man was that he “be fruitful and multiply.” In other words, he was to reproduce after his own kind. God did not tell Adam and Eve, our first parents, to be spiritual. They were already in His image. Sin had not yet come in. He just said, “Multiply. I want more just like you, more in My own image.”

Of course, the image was marred. But Adam and Eve had children. They began to multiply. There came a time, however, when God had to destroy most of the flesh that had been born. He started over with eight people. The more than two billion people who are on the earth today came from the eight who were in the ark, because they were fruitful and multiplied.

Hindrances

Only a few things will ever keep human beings from multiplying themselves in the physical realm. One is that they never marry. If they are not united, they will not reproduce. This is a truth which Christians need to grasp with reference to

spiritual reproduction. When a person becomes a child of God, he should realize that he is to live in union with Jesus Christ if he is going to win others to the Savior.

Another factor that can hinder reproduction is disease or impairment to some part of the body that is needed for reproductive purposes. In the spiritual realm sin is the disease that can keep one from winning the lost.

One other thing that can keep people from having children is immaturity. God in His wisdom saw to it that little children cannot have babies. A little boy must first grow to sufficient maturity to be able to earn a living, and a little girl must be old enough to care for a baby.

Everyone should be born again. That is God's desire. God never intended that man should merely live and die – be a walking corpse to be laid in the ground. The vast majority of people know that there is something beyond the grave, and so each one who is born into God's family should seek others to be born again.

A person is born again when he receives Jesus Christ. *“But as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God...Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God”* (John 1:12-13) – the new birth. It is God's plan that these new babes in Christ grow. All provision is made for their growth into maturity, and then they are to multiply – not only the rich or the educated, but all alike. Every person who is born into God's family is to multiply.

In the physical realm when your children have children, you become a grandparent. Your parents are then great-grandparents, and theirs are great-great-grandparents. And so it should be in the spiritual.

Spiritual babies

Wherever you find a Christian who is not leading men and women to Christ, something is wrong. He may still be a babe.

I do not mean that he does not know a lot of doctrine and is not well informed through hearing good preaching. I know many people who can argue the pre-, the post- and the amillennial position and who know much about dispensations, but who are still immature. Paul said of some such in Corinth, *“And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual (or mature), but as unto carnal, even as unto babes...”* (1 Corinthians 3:1).

Because they were babes, they were immature, incapable of spiritual reproduction. In other words, they could not help other people to be born again. Paul continued, *“I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it ... ye are yet carnal (or babes): for ... there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions...”* (1 Corinthians 3:2-3). I know a lot of church members, Sunday school teachers and members of the women’s missionary society who will say to each other, “Have you heard about so and so?” and pass along some gossip. Such have done an abominable thing in the sight of God. How horrible it is when a Christian hears something and spreads the story! The Book says, *“These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto Him...a lying tongue...”* (Proverbs 6:16-17). Oh, the Christians I know, both men and women, who let lying come in!

“...he that soweth discord among brethren” (Proverbs 16:19) is another. This is walking as a babe, and I believe that it is one of the basic reasons why some Christians do not have people born again into God's family through them. They are sick spiritually. There is something wrong. There is a spiritual disease in their lives. They are immature. There is not that union with Christ.

But when all things are right between you and the Lord, regardless of how much or how little you may know intellectually from the standpoint of the world, you can be a spiritual parent. And that, incidentally, may even be when you are very young in the Lord.

A young lady works at the telephone desk in our office in Colorado Springs. A year and a half ago she was closely associated with the young Communist league in Great Britain.

She heard Billy Graham and accepted the Lord Jesus Christ. Soon she and a couple other girls in her art and drama school were used of the Lord to win some girls to Christ. We taught Pat and some of the others, and they in turn taught the girls whom they led to Christ. Some of these have led still other girls to Christ, and they too are training their friends. Patricia is a great-grandmother already, though she is only about a year and four months old in the Lord.

We see this all the time. I know a sailor who, when he was only four months old in the Lord, was a great-grandfather. He had led some sailors to the Lord who in turn led other sailors to the Lord, and these last led still other sailors to the Lord – yet he was only four months old.

How was this done? God used the pure channel of these young Christians' lives in their exuberance and first love for Christ, and out of their hearts the incorruptible seed of the Word of God was sown in the hearts of other people. It took hold. Faith came by the hearing of the Word. They were born again by faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. They observed those Christians who led them to Christ and shared in the joy, the peace and the thrill of it all. And in their joy, they wanted someone else to know.

In all our Christian audiences, I am sure there are men and women who have been Christians for five, ten or twenty years but who do not know of one person who is living for Jesus Christ today because of them. I am not talking now about merely working for Christ, but about producing for Christ. Someone may say, "I gave out a hundred thousand tracts." That is good, but how many sheep did you bring in?"

Some time ago I talked to 29 missionary candidates. They were graduates of universities or Bible schools or seminaries. As a member of the board I interviewed each one over a period of five days, giving each candidate from half an hour to an hour. Among the questions I asked were two which are very important. The first one had to do with their devotional life. "How is your devotional life?" I asked them. "How is the time you spend with the Lord? Do you feel that your devotional life is what the Lord would have it to be?"

Out of this particular group of 29 only one person said, “I believe my devotional life is what it ought to be.” To the others my question then was, “Why is your devotional life not what it should be?”

“Well, you see, I am here at this summer school,” was a common reply. “We have a concentrated course. We do a year’s work in only ten weeks. We are so busy.”

I said, “All right. Let’s back up to when you were in college. Did you have victory in your devotional life then?”

“Well, not exactly.”

We traced back and found that never since they came to know the Savior had they had a period set aside for daily devotions. That was one of the reasons for their sterility – lack of communion with Christ.

The other question I asked them was, “You are going out to the foreign field. You hope to be used by the Lord in winning men and women to Christ. Is that right?”

“Yes.”

“You want them to go on and live the victorious life, don’t you? You don’t want them just to make a decision and then go back into the world, do you?”

“No.”

“Then may I ask you something more? How many persons do you know by name today who were won to Christ by you and are living for Him?”

“The majority had to admit that they were ready to cross an ocean and learn a foreign language, but they had not won their first soul who was going on with Jesus Christ. A number of them said that they got many people to go to church; others said they had persuaded some to go forward when the invitation was given.

I asked, “Are they living for Christ now?” Their eyes dropped. I then continued, “How do you expect that by crossing an ocean and speaking in a foreign language with people who are suspicious of you, whose way of life is unfamiliar, you will be able to do there what you have not yet done here?”

This is not for missionaries and prospective missionaries only. It is for all of God's people. Every one of His children ought to be a reproducer.

Are you producing? If not, why not? Is it because of a lack of communion with Christ, your Lord, that closeness of fellowship which is part of the great plan? Or is it some sin in your life, an unconfessed something, that has stopped the flow? Or is it that you are still a babe? *“For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again...”* (Hebrews 5:12).

How to produce reproducers

The reason that we are not getting this Gospel to the ends of the earth is not because it is not potent enough.

Twenty-three years ago we took a born-again sailor and spent some time with him, showing him how to reproduce spiritually after his kind. It took time, lots of time. It was not a hurried, 30-minute challenge in a church service and a hasty good-bye with an invitation to come back next week. We spent time together. We took care of his problems and taught him not only to hear God's Word and to read it, but also how to study it. We taught him how to fill the quiver of his heart with the arrows of God's Word, so that the Spirit of God could lift an arrow from his heart and place it to the bow of his lips and pierce a heart for Christ.

He found a number of boys on his ship, but none of them would go all out for the Lord. They would go to church, but when it came right down to doing something, they were “also rans.” He came to me after a month of this and said, “Dawson, I can't get any of these guys on the ship to get down to business.”

I said to him, “Listen, you ask God to give you one. You can't have two until you have one. Ask God to give you a man after your own heart.”

He began to pray. One day he came to me and said, “I think I've found him.” Later he brought the young fellow over.

Three months from the time I started to work with him, he had found a man for Christ, a man of like heart. This first sailor was not the kind of man you had to push and give prizes to before he would do something. He loved the Lord and was willing to pay a price to produce. He worked with this new babe in Christ, and those two fellows began to grow and spiritually reproduce. On that ship 125 men found the Savior before it was sunk at Pearl Harbor.

Men off that first battleship are in four continents of the world as missionaries today. The work spread from ship to ship to ship, so that when the Japanese struck at Pears Harbor, there was a testimony being given on 50 ships of the U.S. fleet. When the war closed, there was work by one or more producers (I am not talking about mere Christians), on more than a thousand of the U.S. Fleet ships and at many army camps and air bases. It had to have a start, however. The devil's great trick is to stop anything like this if he can before it gets started. He will stop you, too, if you let him.

There are Christians whose lives run in circles who, nevertheless, have the desire to be spiritual parents. Take a typical example. You meet him in the morning as he goes to work and say to him, "Why are you going to work?"

"Well, I have to earn money."

"What are you earning money for?" you ask.

"Well," he replies, "I have to buy food."

"What do you want food for?"

"I have to eat so as to have strength to go to work and earn some more money."

"What do you want more money for?"

"I have to buy clothes so that I can be dressed to go to work and earn some more money."

"What do you want more money for?"

"I have to buy a house or pay the rent so I will have a place to rest up, so I will be fit to work and earn some more money." And so it goes. There are many Christians like that who are going in big circles. But you continue your questioning and ask, "What else do you do?"

“Oh, I find time to serve the Lord. I am preaching here and there.” But down behind all of this he has the one desire to be a spiritual father. He is praying that God will give him a man to teach. Perhaps it takes him six months. It need not take that long, but maybe it takes him six months to reach the other for Christ and get him started taking in the Word and giving it out and getting ready to teach a man himself.

So this first man at the end of six months has another man. Each man starts teaching another in the following six months. At the end of the year, there are just four of them. Perhaps each one teaches a Bible class or helps in a street meeting, but at the same time his main interest is seeing how the new fellow he won to the Lord is doing. So at the end of the year the four of them get together and have a prayer meeting and determine, “Now, let’s not allow anything to sidetrack us. Let’s give the Gospel out to a lot of people, but let’s check up on at least one and see him through.”

So the four of them in the next six months each get a man. That makes eight at the end of a year and a half. They all go out after another and at the end of two years there are 16 men. At the end of three years there are 64 men; the 16 have doubled twice. At the end of five years there are 1,024. At the end of fifteen and a half years there are approximately 2,147,500,000. That is the present population of the world of persons over three years of age.

But wait a minute! Suppose that after the first man, A, helps B and B is ready to get his man while A starts helping another, B is sidetracked, washes out and does not produce his first man. Fifteen and one-half years later you can cut your 2,147,500,000 down to 1,073,7500 because the devil caused B to be sterile.

God promised Abraham “... in Isaac shall thy seed be called” (Genesis 21:12), so Abraham waited a long, long time for that son. God’s promise to make Abraham the father of many nations was all wrapped up in that one son, Isaac. If Hitler had been present and had caused Isaac’s death when Abraham had his knife poised over him on Mount Moriah, Hitler could have killed every Jew in that one stroke.

I believe that is why Satan puts all his efforts into getting the Christian busy, busy, busy, but not producing.

Men, where is your man? Women, where is your woman? Where is the one whom you led to Christ and who is now going on with Him?

There is a story in 1 Kings, chapter 20 about a man who gave a prisoner to a servant and instructed the servant to guard the prisoner well. But as the servant was busy here and there the prisoner made his escape.

The curse of today is that we are too busy. I am not talking about being busy earning money to buy food. I am talking about being busy doing Christian things. We have spiritual activity with little productivity. And productivity comes as a result of what we call “follow-up.”

Majoring in reproducing

Five years ago, Billy Graham came to me and said, “Daws, we would like you to help with our follow-up. I’ve been studying the great evangelists and the great revivals and I fail to see that there was much of a follow-up program. We need it. We are having an average of 6,000 people come forward to decide for Christ in a month’s campaign. I feel that with the work you have done you could come in and help us.”

I said, “Billy, I can’t follow up 6,000 people. My work has always been with individuals and small groups.”

“Look, Daws,” he answered, “everywhere I go I meet Navigators. I met them in school in Wheaton. They are in my school right now. (He was president of Northwestern Schools at that time.) There must be something to this.”

“I just don’t have time.” I said.

He tackled me again. The third time he pled with me and said, “Daws, I am not able to sleep nights for thinking of what happens to the converts after a crusade is over.”

At that time I was on my way to Formosa and I said, “While I am there I will pray about it, Billy.” On the sands of a Formosan beach I paced up and down two or three hours a

day praying, “Lord, how can I do this? I am not even getting the work done You have given me to do. How can I take six months of the year to give to Billy?” But God laid the burden upon my heart.

Why should Billy have asked me to do it? I had said to him that day before I left for Formosa, “Billy, you will have to get somebody else.”

He took me by the shoulders and said, “Who else? Who is majoring in this?” I had been majoring in it.

What will it take to jar us out of our complacency and send us home to pray, “God, give me a girl or man whom I can win to Christ, or let me take one who is already won, an infant in Christ, and try to train that one so that he or she will reproduce!”

How thrilled we are to see the masses fill up the seats! But where is your man? I would rather have one “Isaac” alive than a hundred dead, or sterile, or immature.

Beginning of follow-up

One day years ago, I was driving along in my little Model T Ford and saw a young man walking down the street. I stopped and picked him up. As he got into the car, he swore and said, “It’s sure tough to get a ride.” I never hear a man take my Savior’s name in vain but what my heart aches. I reached into my pocket for a tract and said, “Lad, read this.”

He looked up at me and said, “Haven’t I seen you somewhere before?”

I looked at him closely. He looked like someone I should know. We figured out that we had met the year before on the same road. He was on his way to a golf course to caddy when I picked him up. He had gotten into my car and had started out the same way with the name “Jesus Christ.” I had taken exception to his use of that name and had opened up the New Testament and shown him the way of salvation. He had accepted Jesus Christ as his Savior. In parting I had given him

Philippians 1:6, “*Being confident of this very thing, that He which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ.*” “God bless you, son. Read this,” I said, and sped on my merry way.

A year later, there was no more evidence of the new birth and the new creature in this boy than if he had never heard of Jesus Christ.

I had a great passion to win souls and that was my great passion. But after I met this boy the second time on the way to the golf course, I began to go back and find some of my “converts.” I want to tell you, I was sick at heart. It seemed that Philippians 1:6 was not working.

An Armenian boy came into my office one day and told me about all the souls he had won. He said that they were all Armenians and had the list to prove it.

I said, “Well, what is this one doing?”

He said, “That one isn’t doing so good. He is backslidden.”

“What about this one?” We went all down the list and there was not one living a victorious life.

I said, “Give me your Bible.” I turned to Philippians and put a cardboard right under the 6th verse, took a razor blade out of my pocket and started to come down on the page. He grabbed my hand and asked, “What are you going to do?”

“I’m going to cut this verse out,” I said, “It isn’t working.”

Do you know what was wrong? I had been taking the 6th verse away from its context, verses 3 through 7. Paul was not just saying, “All right, the Lord has started something, He will finish it.” But you know, that is what some people tell me when they win a soul. They say, “Well, I just committed him to God.”

Suppose I meet someone who has a large family and say to him, “Who is taking care of your children?”

“My family? Oh, I left them with the Lord.”

Right away I would say to that one, “I have a verse for you: *‘But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he...is worse than an infidel’* (1 Timothy 5:8).”

Paul said to the elders of the church at Ephesus, “*Take heed...to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath*

made you overseers...” (Acts 20:28). You cannot make God the overseer. He makes you the overseer.

We began work on follow-up. This emphasis on finding and helping some of the converts went on for a couple or three years before the Navigator work started. By that time our work included fewer converts but more time spent with the converts. Soon I could say as Paul said to the Philippians, *“I thank my God upon every remembrance of you, Always in every prayer of mine for you all making request with joy, For your fellowship in the Gospel from the first day until now”* (Philippians 1:3-5). He followed up his converts with daily prayer and fellowship. Then he could say, *“Being confident of this very thing, that He which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ”* (Philippians 1:6). In keeping with this the 7th verse reads: *“Even as it is meet (or proper) for me to think this of you all, because I have you in my heart...”*

Until this time I had forgotten to follow up the people God had reached through me. But from then on I began to spend time helping them. That is why sometime later when that first sailor came to me, I saw the value of spending three months with him. I saw an Isaac in him. Isaac had Jacob, and Jacob had the twelve, and all the rest of the nation came through them.

It takes time to do God’s work

You can lead a soul to Christ in from 20 minutes to a couple of hours. But it takes from 20 weeks to a couple of years to get him on the road to maturity, victorious over the sins and the recurring problems that come along. He must learn how to make right decisions. He must be warned of the various “isms” that are likely to reach out with their octopus arms and pull him in and sidetrack him.

But when you get yourself a man, you have doubled your ministry – in fact, you have more than doubled your ministry.

Do you know why? When you teach your man, he sees how it is done and he imitates you.

If I were the minister of a church and had deacons or elders to pass the plate and choir members to sing, I would say, “Thank God for your help. We need you. Praise the Lord for these extra things that you do,” but I would keep pressing home the big job – “Be fruitful and multiply.” All these other things are incidental to the supreme task of winning a man or woman to Jesus Christ and then helping him or her to go on.

Where is your man? Where is your woman? Do you have one? You can ask God for one. Search your hearts. Ask the Lord, “Am I spiritually sterile? If I am, why am I?”

Don’t let your lack of knowledge stand in the way of winning the lost. It used to be the plan of The Navigators in the early days that whenever the sailors were with us for supper each fellow was asked at the end of the meal to quote a verse.

I would say it this way, “Quote a verse you have learned in the last 48 hours if you have one. Otherwise, just give us a verse.” One evening as we quoted verses around the table, my little three-year-old daughter’s turn came. There was a new sailor next to her who did not think about her quoting Scripture, so without giving her an opportunity, he began. She looked up at him as much as to say, “I am a human being,” then she quoted John 3:16 in her own way. “*For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that WHOSOEVER believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life.*” She put the emphasis on the “whosoever” because when she was first taught the verse she could not pronounce that word. Days later that sailor came over and said to me, “You know, I was going to quote that verse of Scripture. It was the only one I knew. But I didn’t really know it, not until little Ruthie quoted it. When she said ‘whosoever,’ I thought, ‘that means me.’ Back on ship I accepted the Lord.” Today that young man is a missionary in South America.

Until several years after we were married, my wife’s father did not know the Lord. Here again God used children to reach a hungry heart. When Ruthie was three and Bruce was five,

they went to visit Grandpa and Grandma. Grandpa tried to get them to repeat nursery rhymes. He said, “Mary had a little lamb” and “Little Boy Blue,” but the children just looked at him and asked, “Who is Little Boy Blue?” He thought they did not know very much.

Their mother said, “They know some things. Quote Romans 3:23, Bruce.” This Bruce did. Then he asked, “Shall I quote another one, Grandpa?”

“Sure,” said Grandpa.

Bruce began to quote verses of Scripture, some 15 in all, and Ruth quoted some in between. This delighted Grandpa. He took them over to the neighbors and to the aunts and uncles, showing them how well these children knew the Scriptures. In the meantime the Word of God was doing its work. It was not long before the Holy Spirit, through the voices of babes, planted the seed in his heart. “*Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast Thou ordained strength...*” (Psalm 8:2).

Soulwinners are not soulwinners because of what they know, but because of the Person they know, how well they know Him and how much they long for others to know Him.

“Oh, but I am afraid,” someone says. Remember, “*The fear of man bringeth a snare: but whoso putteth his trust in the Lord shall be safe*” (Proverbs 29:25). Nothing under heaven except sin, immaturity and lack of communion will put you in a position where you cannot reproduce. Furthermore, there is not anything under heaven that can keep a newly born again one from going on with the Lord if he has a spiritual parent to take care of him and give him the spiritual food God has provided for his normal growth.

Effects obey their causes by irresistible laws. When you sow the seed of God’s Word you will get results. Not every heart will receive the Word, but some will, and the new birth will take place. When a soul is born, give it the care that Paul gave new believers. Paul believed in follow-up work. He was a busy evangelist, but he took time for follow-up. The New Testament is largely made up of the letters of Paul which were follow-up letters to the converts.

James believed in it. “But be ye doers of the Word, and not hearers only,” he said in James 1:22. Peter believed in it, for he said, “*As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the Word, that ye may grow thereby*” (1 Peter 2:2). John believed in it, “I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth” (3 John 4). All the writings of Peter, Paul, James and most of the writings of John are food for the new Christian.

The Gospel spread to the known world during the first century without radio, television or the printing press, because these produced ones were reproducing. But today we have a lot of pew-sitters – people who think that if they are faithful in church attendance, put good-sized gifts into the offering plate and get people to come, they have done their part.

Where is your man? Where is your woman? Where is your boy? Where is your girl? Every one of us, no matter what age we are, should get busy memorizing Scripture. In one Sunday school class a woman 72 years of age and another who was 78 finished The Navigators Topical Memory System. They then had something to give.

Load your heart with this precious Seed. You will find that God will direct you to those whom you can lead to Christ. There are many hearts ready for the Gospel now.

For more information about the **Navigators** ministry you can reach them at www.navigator.org. We encourage you to order numerous copies of this booklet “**Born to Reproduce**” by **Dawson Trotman** from NavPress and give them to your brothers and sisters in the Lord. www.navpress.com/store/search.aspx?q=born+to+reproduce (800. 366.7788).

Navigator.org